

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1

Section 19(6)

INCORPORATION AND POWERS OF GOVERNING BODY

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Sch. 1 modified (E.) (temp. from 1.10.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Modification of Provisions\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2316\)](#), [reg. 3\(1\)\(2\)](#)
- C2** Sch. 1 applied (with modifications) (10.7.2003) by [New Schools \(General\) \(England\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1558\)](#), [regs. 1, 32](#)
- C3** Sch. 1 applied (with modifications) (31.10.2005) by [The New Maintained Schools \(Wales\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2912\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 31](#)
- C4** Sch. 1 applied (with modifications) (31.10.2005) by [The New Maintained Schools \(Wales\) Regulations 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2912\)](#), [regs. 1\(1\), 30\(1\)](#) (with [reg. 30\(2\)](#))
- C5** Sch. 1 applied (with modifications) (25.5.2007) by [The School Governance \(New Schools\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/958\)](#), [regs. 1, 30](#)
- C6** Sch. 1 applied (with modifications) (25.5.2007) by [The School Governance \(New Schools\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/958\)](#), [regs. 1, 31](#)

Introductory

- 1 In the following paragraphs of this Schedule—
- “the 1998 Act” means the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31);
 - “the governing body” means the governing body of a maintained school incorporated under section 19(1).

Commencement Information

- I1** Sch. 1 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 1 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 1 para. 1 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I2** Sch. 1 para. 1 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Name and seal of governing body

- 2 (1) The governing body shall be known as “The governing body of...” with the addition of the name of the school as for the time being set out in the school’s instrument of government.
- (2) The application of the seal of the governing body must be authenticated by the signature—
- (a) of the chairman of the governing body, or
 - (b) of some other member authorised either generally or specially by the governing body to act for that purpose,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

together with the signature of any other member.

- (3) Every document purporting to be an instrument made or issued by or on behalf of the governing body and—
- (a) to be duly executed under the seal of the governing body, or
 - (b) to be signed or executed by a person authorised by the governing body to act in that behalf,
- shall be received in evidence and treated, without further proof, as being so made or issued unless the contrary is shown.

Commencement Information

- I3** Sch. 1 para. 2 partly in force; Sch. 1 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 1 para. 2 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I4** Sch. 1 para. 2 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Powers of governing body

- 3 (1) The governing body may do anything which appears to them to be necessary or expedient for the purposes of, or in connection with—
- (a) the conduct of the school, or
 - (b) the provision of facilities or services under section 27.
- (2) The governing body may provide advice or assistance to—
- (a) the governing body of any other maintained school, whether or not maintained by the same local education authority, or
 - (b) any local education authority.
- (3) The powers conferred by sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) include, in particular, power—
- (a) to borrow such sums as the governing body think fit and, in connection with such borrowing, to grant any mortgage, charge or other security over any land or other property of the governing body,
 - (b) to acquire and dispose of land and other property,
 - (c) to enter into contracts,
 - (d) to invest any sums not immediately required for the purposes of carrying on any activities they have power to carry on,
 - (e) to accept gifts of money, land or other property and apply it, or hold and administer it on trust, for any of those purposes, and
 - (f) to do anything incidental to the conduct of the school, the provision of advice or assistance under sub-paragraph (2), or the provision of facilities and services under section 27.
- (4) The power to borrow money and grant security mentioned in sub-paragraph (3)(a) may only be exercised with the written consent—
- (a) of the Secretary of State (in relation to England) or the National Assembly for Wales (in relation to Wales), or
 - (b) if an order under sub-paragraph (5) so provides, of the local education authority;
- and any such consent may be given for particular borrowing or for borrowing of a particular class.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (5) The Secretary of State or the National Assembly for Wales may by order make provision for any of his or its functions under sub-paragraph (4) to be instead exercisable—
- (a) in the case of all maintained schools, or
 - (b) in the case of any class of such schools specified in the order,
- by the local education authorities by whom those schools are maintained.
- (6) In exercising those functions those authorities shall comply with any directions contained in an order made by the Secretary of State or the National Assembly for Wales.
- (7) Where the school is a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, the power to enter into contracts mentioned in sub-paragraph (3)(c) includes power to enter into contracts for the employment of teachers and other staff, but no such contracts may be entered into by the governing body of a community, voluntary controlled or community special school or of a maintained nursery school.
- (8) Sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) have effect subject to—
- (a) any provisions of the school’s instrument of government, and
 - (b) any provisions of a scheme under section 48 of the 1998 Act (local education authorities’ financial schemes) which relates to the school.

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** Sch. 1 para. 3 modified (temp. from 2.9.2002) by [The Education Act 2002 \(Transitional Provisions etc.\) \(England\) Regulations 2002 \(S.I. 2002/2113\)](#), [reg. 3\(1\)\(3\)](#)
- C8** Sch. 1 para. 3(1)(2) applied (with modifications) (1.2.2008) by [The Education \(Pupil Referral Units\) \(Application of Enactments\) \(England\) Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2979\)](#), [reg. 1\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 20](#)

Commencement Information

- I5** Sch. 1 para. 3(1) except para. (a) in force at 2.9.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
Sch. 1 para. 3(3)-(8) in force at 2.9.2002 for specified purposes for E. by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
Sch. 1 para. 3 in force at 1.10.2002 insofar as not already in force for E. by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I6** Sch. 1 para. 3(1)(a)(2) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)
- I7** Sch. 1 para. 3(1)(b) in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I8** Sch. 1 para. 3(3)-(8) in force at 1.9.2003 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I9** Sch. 1 para. 3(3)-(8) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 4 Regulations may make further provision—
- (a) as to the general powers of the governing body, and
 - (b) as to other matters relating to it as a body corporate.

Commencement Information

- I10** Sch. 1 para. 4 partly in force; Sch. 1 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 1 para. 4 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I11** Sch. 1 para. 4 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Dissolution of governing body

- 5 (1) If the school is discontinued, the governing body are dissolved by virtue of this paragraph—
- (a) on the discontinuance date, or
 - (b) on such later date as the Secretary of State (in relation to England) or the National Assembly for Wales (in relation to Wales) may specify by order made before the discontinuance date.
- [^{F1}(2) In this paragraph “the discontinuance date” means—
- (a) in relation to a school in England, whichever of the following is relevant—
 - (i) the date on which proposals for discontinuing the school are implemented under Part 3 of Schedule 2 to the Education and Inspections Act 2006 ^{F2}...,
 - (ii) the date on which the school is discontinued under section 30 of the 1998 Act, or
 - (iii) the date specified in a direction given under section 17(1) or 68(1) of the Education and Inspections Act 2006;
 - (b) in relation to a school in Wales, whichever of the following is relevant—
 - (i) the date on which proposals for discontinuing the school are implemented under Part 3 of Schedule 6 to the 1998 Act or under Schedule 7 or 7A to the Learning and Skills Act 2000,
 - (ii) the date on which the school is discontinued under section 30 of the 1998 Act, or
 - (iii) the date specified in a direction given under section 19(1) or 32(1) of the 1998 Act.]

Textual Amendments

- F1** Sch. 1 para. 5(2) substituted (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\), s. 188\(3\), Sch. 3 para. 48](#); S.I. 2007/935, art. 7(o)
- F2** Words in Sch. 1 para. 5(2)(a)(i) repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1080\)](#), art. 1(2)(a)(b), Sch. 1 para. 49, [Sch. 2 Pt. 1](#) (with art. 2(3))

Commencement Information

- I12** Sch. 1 para. 5 partly in force; Sch. 1 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 1 para. 5 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4, Sch.](#))
- I13** Sch. 1 para. 5 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 2

Sections 35(7) and 36(7)

EFFECT ON STAFFING OF SUSPENSION OF DELEGATED BUDGET

PART 1

COMMUNITY, VOLUNTARY CONTROLLED, COMMUNITY SPECIAL AND MAINTAINED NURSERY SCHOOLS

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C9 Sch. 2 Pt. 1 applied (W.) (1.4.2006) by [The Staffing of Maintained Schools \(Wales\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/873\)](#), regs. 1(1), **38**

1 The arrangements for the staffing of the school shall be determined by the local education authority.

Commencement Information

I14 Sch. 2 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

2 The authority may appoint, suspend and dismiss teachers and other staff at the school as the authority think fit.

Commencement Information

I15 Sch. 2 para. 2 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

3 The authority shall, in connection with the exercise of their functions under paragraph 2, consult the governing body to such extent as the authority think fit.

Commencement Information

I16 Sch. 2 para. 3 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

4 In relation to teachers at a voluntary controlled school who are reserved teachers within the meaning of section 58 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (appointment and dismissal of certain teachers at schools with a religious character), paragraph 2 shall have effect subject to the provisions of that section.

Commencement Information

I17 Sch. 2 para. 4 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART 2

FOUNDATION, VOLUNTARY AIDED AND FOUNDATION SPECIAL SCHOOLS

Modifications etc. (not altering text)

C10 Sch. 2 Pt. 2 applied (1.9.2003) by [School Staffing \(England\) Regulations 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1963\)](#), regs. 1(2), **37**

C11 Sch. 2 Pt. 2 applied (W.) (1.4.2006) by [The Staffing of Maintained Schools \(Wales\) Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/873\)](#), regs. 1(1), **39**

5 The arrangements for the staffing of the school shall be determined by the local education authority.

Commencement Information

I18 Sch. 2 para. 5 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

6 Except with the consent of the authority, the governing body shall not—
 (a) appoint any teacher to work at the school, or
 (b) dismiss any teacher at the school.

Commencement Information

I19 Sch. 2 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

7 The authority may give the governing body directions—
 (a) as to the educational qualifications of the teachers to be appointed for giving secular education, or
 (b) requiring them to dismiss any teacher at the school;
 but the authority shall not give any directions under paragraph (a) except after consulting the governing body.

Commencement Information

I20 Sch. 2 para. 7 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

8 The authority may give directions to the governing body as to the number and conditions of service of persons employed at the school for the purposes of the care and maintenance of the school premises.

Commencement Information

I21 Sch. 2 para. 8 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), art. 4, **Sch.**

9 Where the trust deed relating to the school provides for a person other than the governing body to be entitled to control the occupation and use of the school premises to any extent, then, if and to the extent that (disregarding any transfer of control authorised by regulations under section 31) the use of those premises is or

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

would be under the control of any such person, the reference in paragraph 8 to the governing body shall be read as a reference to that person.

Commencement Information

I22 Sch. 2 para. 9 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5](#))

10 Paragraphs 6 and 7 have effect subject to section 58 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31).

Commencement Information

I23 Sch. 2 para. 10 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

[^{F3}11 Paragraph 8 has effect subject to—

- (a) any provision made by an order under section 231(2)(a) or 233(2)(a) of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009;
- (b) any provision made by an order under section 233(2)(d) or 234(2)(b) or (4)(b) of that Act, where the order provides that it is to have effect for determining the conditions of employment of persons to whom it applies.]

Textual Amendments

F3 [Sch. 2 para. 11](#) inserted (12.1.2010) by [Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(c. 22\)](#), [ss. 237\(7\)](#), [269\(4\)](#); [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)

SCHEDULE 3

Section 40

AMENDMENTS OF PART 2 OF SCHOOL STANDARDS AND FRAMEWORK ACT 1998

Introductory

1 In this Schedule “the 1998 Act” means the School Standards and Framework Act 1998.

Commencement Information

I24 Sch. 3 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 3 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 3 para. 1 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)

I25 Sch. 3 para. 1 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Expenditure incurred for community purposes

2 (1) Section 48 of the 1998 Act (local education authorities’ financial schemes) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1) after “by the authority” there is inserted “ or the exercise by the governing bodies of those schools of the power conferred by section 27 of the

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.)

”.

(3) In subsection (2) after paragraph (d) there is inserted—

“(dd) the imposition, by or under the scheme, of conditions which must be complied with by schools in relation to the exercise of the power mentioned in subsection (1), including conditions prescribing financial controls and procedures;”.

Commencement Information

- I26** Sch. 3 para. 2 partly in force; Sch. 3 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 3 para. 2 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
- I27** Sch. 3 para. 2 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

3 In section 50 of the 1998 Act (effect of financial delegation), in subsection (4) (meaning of “purposes of the school”) before paragraph (a) there is inserted—

“(za) facilities and services under section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.),”.

Commencement Information

- I28** Sch. 3 para. 3 partly in force; Sch. 3 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 3 para. 3 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
- I29** Sch. 3 para. 3 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

4 After section 51 of the 1998 Act there is inserted—

“Expenditure incurred for community purposes

51A Expenditure incurred for community purposes

- (1) Expenditure incurred by the governing body of a maintained school in the exercise of the power conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body to provide community facilities etc.) shall, as against third parties, be treated as part of the expenses of maintaining the school under section 22, but if met by the local education authority may be recovered by them from the governing body.
- (2) Except as provided by regulations under section 50(3)(b), no expenditure incurred by the governing body of a maintained school in the exercise of the power referred to in subsection (1) shall be met from the school’s budget share for any financial year.
- (3) Subsection (2) applies at a time when the school does not have a delegated budget by virtue of any suspension under section 17 or Schedule 15, as well as a time when it does have a delegated budget.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I30** Sch. 3 para. 4 partly in force; Sch. 3 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 3 para. 4 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
- I31** Sch. 3 para. 4 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

5 In Schedule 15 to the 1998 Act (suspension of financial delegation), in paragraph 1(1) (cases where local education authority may suspend governing body's right to a delegated budget) the word "or" at the end of paragraph (a) is omitted and at the end of paragraph (b) there is inserted "or

- (c) are not managing in a satisfactory manner any expenditure, or sums received, in the exercise of the power conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power to provide community facilities etc.)."

Commencement Information

- I32** Sch. 3 para. 5 partly in force; Sch. 3 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 3 para. 5 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
- I33** Sch. 3 para. 5 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Teachers engaged otherwise than as employees

6 (1) Section 58 of the 1998 Act (appointment and dismissal of certain teachers at a school with a religious character) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

- (a) for "the teaching staff of" there is substituted " teachers at ", and
(b) for "the teaching staff shall" there is substituted " the teachers shall ".

(3) In subsection (3), for "the number of the teaching staff", in both places where it occurs, there is substituted " the total number of teachers ".

(4) In subsection (4), for "while holding the post of" there is substituted " while he remains ".

(5) In subsection (6), for the words from "may" to the end there is substituted "may—

- (a) in the case of a teacher who is an employee, require the appropriate body to dismiss him from employment as a reserved teacher at the school, and
(b) in the case of a teacher who is engaged otherwise than under a contract of employment, require the governing body to terminate his engagement."

(6) In subsection (9), in the definition of "reserved teacher", after "employed" there is inserted " or engaged ".

Commencement Information

- I34** Sch. 3 para. 6 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I35** [Sch. 3 para. 6](#) in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 7 In section 59 of the 1998 Act (staff at community, secular foundation or voluntary, or special school), in subsection (2)(b), after “employed” there is inserted “ or engaged ”.

Commencement Information

- I36** Sch. 3 para. 7 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
I37 [Sch. 3 para. 7](#) in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 8 (1) Section 60 of the 1998 Act (staff at foundation or voluntary school with religious character) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (5)(b), after “employment” there is inserted “ or engagement ”.
(3) In subsection (6), after “employed” there is inserted “ or engaged ”.

Commencement Information

- I38** Sch. 3 para. 8 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
I39 [Sch. 3 para. 8](#) in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

SCHEDULE 4

Section 51

ADMISSION ARRANGEMENTS

- 1 In this Schedule “the 1998 Act” means the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31).

Commencement Information

- I40** Sch. 4 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 1 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
I41 Sch. 4 para. 1 in force at 9.1.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)

Meaning of “appeal panel”

- 2 In section 84(6) of the 1998 Act (interpretation of Chapter 1 of Part 3), in the definition of “appeal panel”, for “under Schedule 24 or 25” there is substituted “ in accordance with regulations under section 94(5) or 95(3) ”.

Commencement Information

- I42** Sch. 4 para. 2 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 2 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [Sch. paras. 2, 3](#))
I43 Sch. 4 para. 2 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))
I44 Sch. 4 para. 2 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(3\)\(4\)](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Parental preferences

- 3 (1) Section 86 of the 1998 Act (parental preferences) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for “subsections (3) and (6)” there is substituted “ subsections (3) and (3A) ”.
- (3) After subsection (2) there is inserted—
- “(2A) Arrangements made under subsection (1) may allow the parent of a child to express preferences for more than one school; but nothing in this section requires the admission authority for a maintained school for which a child’s parent has expressed a preference to offer the child admission to the school if, in accordance with a scheme adopted or made by virtue of section 89B, the child is offered admission to a different school for which the parent has also expressed a preference.”
- (4) In subsection (3)—
- (a) at the end of paragraph (a) there is inserted “ or ”, and
- (b) paragraph (b) is omitted.
- (5) After subsection (3) there is inserted—
- “(3A) In relation to a preference expressed by a parent as to the school at which he wishes secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age to be provided for his child, the duty imposed by subsection (2) also does not apply if the relevant selection arrangements are wholly based on selection by reference to ability or aptitude and compliance with the preference would be incompatible with selection under those arrangements.
- (3B) In subsection (3A) “the relevant selection arrangements”, in relation to a school, means—
- (a) the arrangements for admission to the school for secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age, or
- (b) those arrangements and the arrangements for entry to the sixth form of children who have been admitted to the school;
- and references in this subsection to entry to the sixth form of children who have been admitted to a school shall be construed in accordance with section 94(7).”
- (6) Subsection (6) shall cease to have effect.
- (7) In subsection (8), for “subsection (3)” there is substituted “ subsections (3) and (3A) ”.
- (8) In subsection (9), for “provide for all pupils admitted to the school” there is substituted “ , or arrangements such as are mentioned in subsection (3B), provide for all pupils selected under the arrangements ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I45** Sch. 4 para. 3 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 3 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) (as amended (4.12.2003) by [S.I. 2003/2992](#), [arts. 1, 3](#))
- I46** Sch. 4 para. 3(1)-(5) (7)(8) in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(1\)](#))
- I47** [Sch. 4 para. 3\(6\)](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Children permanently excluded from two or more schools

- 4 In section 87 of the 1998 Act (no requirement to admit children permanently excluded from two or more schools) for subsection (4) there is substituted—

“(4) However, a child who has been permanently excluded from a school shall not be treated for the purposes of this section as having been so excluded if—

- (a) he was reinstated as a pupil at the school following the giving of a direction to that effect by the relevant authority in accordance with regulations under subsection (3)(b) or (c) of section 52 of the Education Act 2002,
- (b) on a review of his exclusion carried out in accordance with regulations under subsection (3)(b) of that section or an appeal made pursuant to regulations under subsection (3)(c) of that section, the relevant authority decided—
 - (i) that it would not be practical to give a direction requiring his reinstatement as a pupil at the school, but
 - (ii) that it would otherwise have been appropriate to give such a direction, or
- (c) he was so excluded at a time when he had not attained compulsory school age.

(4A) In subsection (4) “the relevant authority” means—

- (a) the responsible body as defined by subsection (5) of section 52 of the Education Act 2002, or
- (b) a panel constituted in accordance with regulations under subsection (3)(c) of that section.”

Commencement Information

- I48** Sch. 4 para. 4 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)
- I49** Sch. 4 para. 4 in force at 9.1.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)

Procedure for determining admission arrangements

- 5 (1) Section 89 of the 1998 Act (procedure for determining admission arrangements) is amended as follows.

- (2) For subsection (2) there is substituted—

“(2) Before determining the admission arrangements which are to apply for a particular school year, the admission authority shall consult the following about the proposed arrangements, namely—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) whichever of the governing body and the local education authority are not the admission authority,
 - (b) the admission authorities for all other maintained schools in the relevant area or for such class of such schools as may be prescribed,
 - (c) the governing bodies for all community and voluntary controlled schools in the relevant area (so far as not falling within paragraph (a) or (b)), and
 - (d) the admission authorities for maintained schools of any prescribed description.
- (2A) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to the proposed admission arrangements for a particular school year if—
- (a) the admission authority are the school’s governing body, and
 - (b) prescribed conditions are satisfied in relation to that year.”
- (3) In subsections (4), (5) and (6), for “bodies whom they consulted under subsection (2)” there is substituted “ appropriate bodies ”.
- (4) In subsection (8), after paragraph (f) there is inserted—
- “(fa) requiring an admission authority who have made a determination of a prescribed description under this section to publish such information relating to the determination (including information as to the authority’s reasons for making the determination) as may be prescribed;”.
- (5) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(8A) The power under paragraph (fa) of subsection (8) to require an admission authority to publish information includes power to require them to publish it—
 - (a) by giving a notice containing the information to prescribed persons, or
 - (b) in any other prescribed manner.”
- (6) For subsection (9) there is substituted—
- “(9) Where the local education authority are the admission authority for a community or voluntary controlled school, they shall consult the governing body before making any reference under subsection (5).”
- (7) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(10) In this section “the appropriate bodies”, in relation to an admission authority, means the bodies whom they were required to consult under subsection (2), or would but for subsection (2A) have been required so to consult.”

Commencement Information

- I50** Sch. 4 para. 5 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 5 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)
- I51** Sch. 4 para. 5 in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by S.I. 2006/172, art. 4, Sch.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Reference of objections

- 6 In section 90(1)(b) of the 1998 Act (reference of objections to adjudicator or Secretary of State), for “consulted by the admission authority under section 89(2)” there is substituted “ who were, or would but for subsection (2A) of section 89 have been, required to be consulted by the admission authority under subsection (2) of that section ”.

Commencement Information

- I52** Sch. 4 para. 6 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 6 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I53** [Sch. 4 para. 6](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Publication of information

- 7 For section 92 of the 1998 Act (publication of information about admissions) there is substituted—

“92 Publication of information about admissions

Regulations may—

- (a) require the publication by a local education authority of such information relating to admissions as may be prescribed,
- (b) require the publication by the governing body of a foundation or voluntary aided school of such information relating to admissions as may be prescribed,
- (c) require or allow the publication by the governing body of any school maintained by a local education authority, or by the local education authority on behalf of the governing body, of such information relating to the school as may be prescribed, and
- (d) make provision as to the time by which, and the manner in which, information required to be published by virtue of this section is to be published.”

Commencement Information

- I54** Sch. 4 para. 7 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 7 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I55** [Sch. 4 para. 7](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Appeal arrangements: general

- 8 (1) Section 94 of the 1998 Act (appeal arrangements: general) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) A local education authority shall make arrangements for enabling the parent of a child who has been admitted to a community or voluntary controlled school maintained by the authority to appeal against any decision made by or on behalf of the governing body refusing permission for the child to enter the school’s sixth form.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) After subsection (2) there is inserted—

“(2A) The governing body of a foundation or voluntary aided school shall make arrangements for enabling the parent of a child who has been admitted to the school to appeal against any decision made by or on behalf of the governing body refusing permission for the child to enter the school’s sixth form.”

(4) In subsection (3), after “(2)” there is inserted “ or (2A) ”.

(5) In subsection (4), in paragraph (a), after “(1)” there is inserted “ or (1A) ” and in paragraph (b), after “(2)” there is inserted “ or (2A) ”.

(6) In subsection (6) for “under Schedule 24” there is substituted “ pursuant to arrangements under this section ”.

(7) After that subsection there is inserted—

“(7) References in this section, in relation to a child who has been admitted to a school, to his entering the school’s sixth form are to his being transferred to a class at the school in which secondary education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age is provided from a class in which such education is not provided.”

Commencement Information

- I56** Sch. 4 para. 8 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 8 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [Sch. paras. 2, 3](#))
- I57** Sch. 4 para. 8 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))
- I58** Sch. 4 para. 8 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(3\)](#))

Appeals relating to children to whom section 87 applies

9 In section 95 of the 1998 Act (appeals relating to children to whom section 87 applies), for subsection (3) there is substituted—

“(3) An appeal by the governing body pursuant to arrangements made under subsection (2) shall be to an appeal panel constituted in accordance with regulations.

(3A) Regulations may make provision about the making of appeals pursuant to arrangements under subsection (2), including provision—

- (a) requiring prescribed information to be given to governing bodies in prescribed circumstances,
- (b) as to the procedure on such appeals,
- (c) for the payment by the local education authority of allowances to members of an appeal panel, and
- (d) as to the matters to which an appeal panel is to have regard in considering an appeal.

(3B) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (3A)(c) may provide for any of the provisions of sections 173 to 174 of the Local Government Act 1972 (allowances to members of local authorities and other bodies) to apply with prescribed modifications in relation to members of an appeal panel.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I59** Sch. 4 para. 9 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 9 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [art. 3](#), [Sch. paras. 2, 3](#))
- I60** Sch. 4 para. 9 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. para. 3](#))
- I61** Sch. 4 para. 9 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(4\)](#))

Direction to admit child to specified school

- 10 In section 96(1) of the 1998 Act (direction to admit child to specified school) after “section” there is inserted “ to the governing body of a school for which they are not the admission authority ”.

Commencement Information

- I62** Sch. 4 para. 10 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 10 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 10 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I63** Sch. 4 para. 10 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(2\)](#))

Procedure for giving direction under section 96

- 11 (1) Section 97 of the 1998 Act (procedure for giving direction under section 96) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (4) there is substituted—
- “(4) On a reference under subsection (3) the Secretary of State may determine which school is to be required to admit the child, and if he does so—
- (a) where the local education authority referred to in subsection (1) are the admission authority for that school, they shall—
- (i) admit the child to the school, and
- (ii) give notice in writing to the governing body and head teacher of the school of the Secretary of State’s determination, and
- (b) in any other case, that school shall be specified in the direction.”
- (3) For subsection (6) there is substituted—
- “(6) A direction under section 96 shall be given by notice in writing; and a copy of the notice shall be given by the local education authority to the head teacher of the school.”

Commencement Information

- I64** Sch. 4 para. 11 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 11 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I65** Sch. 4 para. 11 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(2\)](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Nursery education, special schools and children with statements

- 12 (1) Section 98 of the 1998 Act (admission for nursery education etc) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (2) there is substituted—
- “(2) The admission of children to a school for nursery education shall be disregarded—
- (a) for the purposes of any determination under section 89 of the number of pupils in any relevant age group that it is intended to admit to a primary school in a school year, and
- (b) in determining for the purposes of section 89A what is a relevant age group in relation to a primary school.”
- (3) In subsection (3), after “Chapter” there is inserted “ apart from subsections (4A) and (4B) ”.
- (4) After subsection (4) there is inserted—
- “(4A) The person responsible for admitting, or refusing to admit, children to a maintained school for nursery education shall be the person who (by virtue of section 88(1)) is the admission authority for the school.
- (4B) Regulations may make provision as to the person who is to be responsible for admitting, or refusing to admit, children to maintained nursery schools.”
- (5) In subsection (8) after “this section” there is inserted “ , apart from subsections (4A) and (4B), ”.
- (6) For subsection (9) there is substituted—
- “(9) Such children shall, in addition, be taken into account for the purposes of—
- (a) the references in section 86(5), (5B) and (9) to a number of pupils, and
- (b) any determination under section 89 of the number of pupils in a relevant age group that it is intended to admit, or to admit either as boarders or otherwise than as boarders, to a school in a school year.”

Commencement Information

- I66** Sch. 4 para. 12 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with [Sch. para. 2](#))
- I67** Sch. 4 para. 12(1)(3)-(5) in force at 31.3.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#) (with [art. 7](#))
- I68** [Sch. 4 para. 12\(2\)\(6\)](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991

- 13 In section 3(1) of the Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 (1991 No. 2) (transactions for which advice or consent of Board is required), after paragraph (c) there is inserted—
- “(cc) consulting under section 89(2) of that Act about proposed admission arrangements for any school year;”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I69** Sch. 4 para. 13 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 13 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I70** [Sch. 4 para. 13](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Education Act 1996

- 14 In section 439(2) of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (specification of school intended to be named in a school attendance order), for “fixed in accordance with section 93 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (fixing admission numbers)” there is substituted “determined in accordance with section 89 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (determination of admission numbers)”.

Commencement Information

- I71** Sch. 4 para. 14 partly in force; Sch. 4 para. 14 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 4 para. 14 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [Sch.](#))
- I72** [Sch. 4 para. 14](#) in force at 1.2.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/172](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

SCHEDULE 5

Section 56(3)

SCHOOLS CAUSING CONCERN: AMENDMENTS CONSEQUENTIAL ON SECTIONS 55 AND 56

- 1 In section 14 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (powers of intervention exercisable by local education authorities) for subsection (3) there is substituted—
- “(3) Those provisions shall not apply to a school to which section 15 applies by virtue of subsection (4) or (6) of that section (school with serious weaknesses or requiring special measures) if, in connection with the same inspection falling within subsection (4)(a) or (6)(a) of that section—
- (a) the Secretary of State has exercised in relation to the school his power under section 18 (power to appoint additional governors) and any additional governors appointed in the exercise of that power remain in office; or
- (b) he has exercised in relation to the school his power under section 19 (power to direct closure of school).”

Commencement Information

- I73** Sch. 5 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 5 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#); Sch. 5 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 2 (1) Section 16 of that Act (power of local education authority to appoint additional governors) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (3) there is substituted—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(3) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(4) (school with serious weaknesses) or section 15(6) (school requiring special measures), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is exercisable only if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—

- (a) the Secretary of State has given the local education authority a notice under section 16A(3) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
- (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date of the notice.”

(3) Subsection (4) is omitted.

(4) In subsection (6)(a), for “section 15(6)” there is substituted “ section 15(4) or (6) ”.

(5) In subsection (8)—

- (a) in paragraph (a), for “section 15(6)” there is substituted “ section 15(4) or (6) ”, and
- (b) for paragraph (b) there is substituted—
 - “(b) paragraph (a) of section 14(3) does not apply in connection with the same inspection falling within subsection (4)(a) or (6)(a) of section 15.”.

(6) For subsection (9) there is substituted—

“(9) The power conferred by subsection (8) is only exercisable if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—

- (a) the appropriate appointing authority have received a notice in writing from the Secretary of State informing them that he has received from the Chief Inspector a notice under section 16A(2) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
- (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date of the notice from the Secretary of State.”

(7) After subsection (12) there is inserted—

“(12A) The Secretary of State may in respect of any particular school determine that subsections (3)(b) and (9)(b) shall have effect as if the reference to ten days were to such shorter period as he may determine.”

(8) Subsection (13) is omitted.

Commencement Information

I74 Sch. 5 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 5 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#); Sch. 5 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

3 (1) Section 17 of that Act (power of local education authority to suspend right to delegated budget) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (3) there is substituted—

“(3) Where this section so applies in the case of a school falling within section 15(4) (school with serious weaknesses) or section 15(6) (school

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

requiring special measures), the power conferred by subsection (1) above is exercisable only if the following conditions are satisfied, namely—

- (a) the Secretary of State has given the local education authority a notice under section 16A(3) of the School Inspections Act 1996, and
- (b) a period of not less than ten days has elapsed since the date on which the copy was given.”

(3) In subsection (4), for “subsection (3)(c)” there is substituted “ subsection (3)(b) ”.

Commencement Information

I75 Sch. 5 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 5 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#); Sch. 5 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

SCHEDULE 6

Section 59

GOVERNING BODIES CONSISTING OF INTERIM EXECUTIVE MEMBERS - SCHEDULE TO BE INSERTED IN SCHOOL STANDARDS AND FRAMEWORK ACT 1998 AS SCHEDULE 1A

Commencement Information

I76 Sch. 6 in force at 2.9.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
I77 Sch. 6 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

“SCHEDULE 1A

Section 19A

Interpretation of Schedule

1 (1) In this Schedule—

“the appropriate authority” means—

- (a) where this Schedule applies by virtue of a notice under section 16A(1), the local education authority who gave the notice, and
- (b) where this Schedule applies by virtue of a notice under section 18A(1), the Secretary of State;

“existing governors”, in relation to a school in respect of which a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) has been given, means the governors who hold office immediately before the governing body becomes constituted in accordance with this Schedule;

“the interim period”, in relation to a school in respect of which a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) has been given, means the period during which the governing body is constituted in accordance with this Schedule;

“a normally constituted governing body” means a governing body constituted in accordance with regulations made by virtue of section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies).

(2) In this Schedule any reference to the discontinuance of a maintained school is a reference to the local education authority ceasing to maintain it.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Governing body to consist of members appointed by appropriate authority

- 2 (1) The governing body of the school shall consist of members appointed by the appropriate authority, instead of being constituted in accordance with regulations made by virtue of section 19 of the Education Act 2002.
- (2) In the following provisions of this Schedule—
 - (a) the governing body as constituted in accordance with this Schedule is referred to as “the interim executive board”, and
 - (b) the members of the governing body as so constituted are referred to as “interim executive members”.

Effect of notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1)

- 3 (1) On the date specified in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1), the existing governors shall vacate office.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the appointment of an existing governor as an interim executive member.
- (3) During the interim period, any reference in any provision contained in, or made under, the Education Acts to a governor or foundation governor of a school shall have effect, in relation to the school, as a reference to an interim executive member.
- (4) During the interim period, section 83 (modification of provisions making governors of foundation or voluntary school ex officio trustees) shall have effect in relation to the school with the substitution for paragraphs (a) to (c) of a reference to the interim executive members.

Interim executive members

- 4 (1) The number of interim executive members must not be less than two.
- (2) The initial appointment of interim executive members shall be made so as to take effect on the date specified in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1).
- (3) The appropriate authority may appoint further interim executive members at any time during the interim period.
- 5 (1) Every appointment of an interim executive member must be made by an instrument in writing setting out the terms of his appointment.
- (2) An interim executive member—
 - (a) shall hold office in accordance with the terms of his appointment and subject to paragraph 18, and
 - (b) may at any time be removed from office by the appropriate authority for incapacity or misbehaviour.
- (3) The terms of appointment of an interim executive member may provide for his appointment to be terminable by the appropriate authority by notice.

Duty of appropriate authority to inform other persons

- 6 (1) The appropriate authority shall give a copy of the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) and of every instrument of appointment of an interim executive member—
 - (a) to every interim executive member,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) to every existing governor of the school,
 - (c) where the local education authority are the appropriate authority, to the Secretary of State,
 - (d) where the Secretary of State is the appropriate authority, to the local education authority,
 - (e) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, to the appropriate diocesan authority, and
 - (f) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, to the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.
- (2) A failure to comply with sub-paragraph (1) does not invalidate the notice or appointment.

Power to specify duration of interim period

- 7 The appropriate authority may in the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) specify the duration of the interim period.

Chairman

- 8 The appropriate authority may nominate one of the interim executive members to be chairman of the interim executive board.

Remuneration and allowances

- 9 The appropriate authority may pay to any interim executive member such remuneration and allowances as the appropriate authority may determine.

Duty of interim executive board

- 10 (1) During the interim period, the interim executive board shall conduct the school so as to secure, so far as is practicable to do so, the provision of a sound basis for future improvement in the conduct of the school.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) is without prejudice to the other duties of the interim executive board as governing body.

Proceedings of interim executive board

- 11 (1) The interim executive board may determine their own procedure.
- (2) The interim executive board may make such arrangements as they think fit for the discharge of their functions by any other person.

Effect on suspension of delegated budget

- 12 (1) If immediately before the date specified in a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) the school does not have a delegated budget, the suspension of the governing body's right to a delegated budget is by virtue of this sub-paragraph revoked with effect from that date.
- (2) If a notice under paragraph 1 of Schedule 15 (suspension of delegated budget for mismanagement etc.) has been given to the governing body before the date specified

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

in a notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) but has not yet taken effect, the notice shall cease to have effect on that date.

- (3) During the interim period, the local education authority may not exercise the power conferred by section 17 (power to suspend right to delegated budget).
- (4) Sub-paragraph (1) is to be construed in accordance with section 49(7).

Exclusion of certain statutory provisions

- 13 (1) Regulations made by virtue of subsection (2) or (3) of section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies) shall not apply in relation to the interim executive board.
- (2) The instrument of government of the school shall not, so far as it relates to the constitution of the governing body, have effect in relation to the interim executive board.
- 14 During the interim period—
 - (a) the local education authority may not exercise any power conferred by section 16 (power to appoint additional governors), and
 - (b) the Secretary of State may not exercise any power conferred by section 18 (power to appoint additional governors).

Closure of school

- 15 (1) At any time during the interim period, the interim executive board may, if they think fit, make a report to the local education authority and the Secretary of State recommending that the school be discontinued, and stating the reasons for that recommendation.
- (2) The interim executive board may not—
 - (a) publish under section 29(2) proposals to discontinue the school, or
 - (b) serve notice under section 30(2).
- 16 (1) Where during the interim period—
 - (a) the Secretary of State gives a direction under section 19(1) or 32(1) in relation to the school, or
 - (b) the local education authority determine to discontinue the school,
 the interim period shall continue until the discontinuance date, even where it would otherwise end before that date.
- (2) In this paragraph “the discontinuance date” means—
 - (a) the date on which proposals for discontinuing the school are implemented under Part 3 of Schedule 6,
 - (b) the date on which the school is discontinued under section 30, or
 - (c) the date specified in the direction under section 19(1) or 32(1),
 as the case may be.

Notice of resumption of government by normally constituted governing body

- 17 (1) Where—
 - (a) the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) did not specify the duration of the interim period, and
 - (b) paragraph 16 does not apply,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

the appropriate authority may give notice to the persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) specifying a date on which the governing body are to become a normally constituted governing body.

- (2) The persons referred to in sub-paragraph (1) are—
- (a) every interim executive member,
 - (b) where the local education authority are the appropriate authority, the Secretary of State,
 - (c) where the Secretary of State is the appropriate authority, the local education authority,
 - (d) in the case of a foundation or voluntary school which is a Church of England school, a Church in Wales school or a Roman Catholic Church school, the appropriate diocesan authority, and
 - (e) in the case of any other foundation or voluntary school, the person or persons by whom the foundation governors are appointed.

Time when interim executive members cease to hold office

- 18 (1) The interim executive members shall vacate office—
- (a) in a case where paragraph 16 applies, on the discontinuance date within the meaning of that paragraph,
 - (b) in a case where that paragraph does not apply and the notice under section 16A(1) or 18A(1) specified the duration of the interim period, at the end of the specified period, and
 - (c) in any other case, on the date specified under paragraph 17 (1).
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the termination of the appointment of an interim executive member at any earlier time under paragraph 5(2)(b) or in accordance with the terms of his appointment.

Establishment of normally constituted governing body

- 19 (1) Where interim executive members are to vacate office on the date referred to in paragraph 18(1)(b) or (c), the local education authority shall make arrangements providing for the constitution of the governing body on and after that date.
- (2) Regulations may make provision with respect to the transition from an interim executive board to a normally constituted governing body, and may in connection with that transition—
- (a) modify any provision made under any of sections 19, 20 and 23 of the Education Act 2002 or by Schedule 1 to that Act,
 - (b) apply any such provision with or without modifications, and
 - (c) make provision corresponding to or similar to any such provision.
- (3) The provision that may be made by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) includes, in particular, provision enabling governors to be elected or appointed, and to exercise functions, before the end of the interim period.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 7

Section 65

ACADEMIES: SUPPLEMENTARY

PART 1

LAND

- 1 In the Education Act 1996 (c. 56), the following Schedule is inserted after Schedule 35—

“SCHEDULE 35A

ACADEMIES: LAND

Transfer schemes

- 1 (1) The Secretary of State may make a scheme in relation to land if these requirements are met—
- (a) a local education authority holds a freehold or leasehold interest in the land when the scheme is made;
 - (b) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the scheme is made the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school;
 - (c) at the time the scheme is made the land is no longer used as mentioned in paragraph (b) or the Secretary of State thinks it is about to be no longer so used;
 - (d) before making the scheme the Secretary of State consulted the authority.
- (2) The Secretary of State may also make a scheme in relation to land if these requirements are met—
- (a) a local education authority holds a freehold or leasehold interest in the land when the scheme is made;
 - (b) the land forms the whole or part of a site specified in a notice published under section 70 of the Education Act 2002 (new schools to meet increased demand for secondary education) as a possible site for a new school;
 - (c) before making the scheme, the Secretary of State consulted the authority.
- (3) These requirements must be met as regards a scheme under subparagraph (1) or (2)—
- (a) the scheme must provide for a transfer of the authority’s interest in the land or in such part of it as is specified in the scheme;
 - (b) the transfer must be to a person (the transferee) who is specified in the scheme and is concerned with the running of an Academy;
 - (c) the transfer must be made to the transferee for the purposes of the Academy;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) in the case of a scheme under sub-paragraph (2), the Academy must have been the subject of proposals published under section 70 of the Education Act 2002;
 - (e) the scheme must provide for the transfer to the transferee of any right or liability held by the authority as holder of the interest in the land or specified part concerned.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3) the reference to a right or liability—
- (a) includes a reference to a right or liability as a trustee, but
 - (b) excludes a reference to a liability in respect of the principal of or interest on a loan.
- (5) A scheme may include such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks are appropriate.
- (6) A scheme must be so expressed that it does not come into force while the land concerned is used as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b).
- (7) A scheme comes into force—
- (a) on the day it specifies for it to come into force, or
 - (b) on the day it otherwise identifies as the day for it to come into force.
- (8) When a scheme comes into force it has effect to transfer (in accordance with its provisions) the interests, rights and liabilities to which it applies.
- (9) A transfer made by virtue of a scheme is binding on all persons (as well as on the authority and the transferee) even if, apart from this sub-paragraph, it would have required the consent or concurrence of any person.

Restriction on disposal

- 2 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
 - (b) the authority proposes to make a disposal in respect of the interest, or to enter into a contract to make a disposal in respect of it, or to grant an option to make an acquisition in respect of it, and
 - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the disposal, contract or option is proposed to be made, entered into or granted, the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
- (2) Unless the Secretary of State consents, the authority must not make the disposal or enter into the contract or grant the option.
- (3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to a disposal made in pursuance of a contract made, or option granted, before the coming into force of this paragraph.
- (4) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to—
- (a) a disposal in favour of a person for the purposes of an Academy and for no consideration;
 - (b) a contract to make such a disposal;

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) a grant of an option for a person to make an acquisition for the purposes of an Academy and for no consideration.
- (5) A disposal or contract or grant is not invalid by reason only that it is made in contravention of sub-paragraph (2).
 - (6) A person acquiring an interest in land or entering into a contract to acquire it is not to be concerned to enquire whether consent required by sub-paragraph (2) has been given.
- 3
- (1) This paragraph applies if an authority makes a disposal or enters into a contract or grants an option in contravention of paragraph 2(2).
 - (2) In the case of a grant of an option, the Secretary of State may by notice served on the option holder repudiate the option at any time before it is exercised.
 - (3) In the case of a contract to make a disposal in respect of an interest, the Secretary of State may by notice served on the other party to the contract repudiate it at any time before a conveyance of the interest is executed.
 - (4) A repudiation under sub-paragraph (2) or (3) has effect—
 - (a) when the notice is served, and
 - (b) as if the repudiation were made by the authority.
 - (5) In the case of a disposal in respect of an interest (whether or not in pursuance of an option or contract falling within sub-paragraph (2) or (3)) the Secretary of State may purchase the interest concerned compulsorily.
 - (6) The Acquisition of Land Act 1981 (c. 67) is to apply in relation to the compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (5).
 - (7) On completion of a compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (5) the Secretary of State must transfer it to a person concerned with the running of an Academy.
 - (8) If the Secretary of State acquires an interest by compulsory purchase under sub-paragraph (5) he is entitled to recover from the authority an amount equal to the aggregate of—
 - (a) the compensation agreed or awarded in respect of the purchase,
 - (b) any interest payable by him in respect of the compensation, and
 - (c) the costs and expenses incurred by him in connection with the making of the compulsory purchase order.
 - (9) The authority must provide the Secretary of State with such information as he may require it to provide in connection with a compulsory purchase under sub-paragraph (5).
- 4
- (1) For the purposes of paragraphs 2 and 3—
 - (a) references to a disposal in respect of an interest are to a disposal of the whole interest or of a lesser interest;
 - (b) references to an acquisition in respect of an interest are to an acquisition of the whole interest or of a lesser interest.
 - (2) If the disposal referred to in paragraph 3(3) or (5) is a disposal of a lesser interest, the reference there to the interest concerned is to the lesser interest.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Restriction on appropriation

- 5 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
 - (b) the authority proposes to make an appropriation of the land under section 122 of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70), and
 - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the day on which the appropriation is proposed to be made the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
- (2) Unless the Secretary of State consents, the authority must not make the appropriation.
- 6 (1) This paragraph applies if an authority makes an appropriation in contravention of paragraph 5(2).
- (2) The Secretary of State may purchase the interest concerned compulsorily.
- (3) Paragraph 3(6) to (9) apply to a compulsory purchase of an interest under sub-paragraph (2) above as they apply to a compulsory purchase of an interest under paragraph 3(5).

Duty to inform

- 7 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) applies if—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is held by a local education authority,
 - (b) the authority proposes to change the use of the land in such a way that (were the change made) the land would cease to be capable of use wholly or mainly for the purposes of a school, and
 - (c) at any time in the period of eight years ending with the date of the proposed change of use the land was used wholly or mainly for the purposes of a county school or community school.
- (2) The authority must inform the Secretary of State of the proposal.

Former Academies

- 8 (1) This paragraph applies if—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is transferred from a local education authority on or after 28th July 2000,
 - (b) the transfer is made to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
 - (c) the first or the second condition set out below is satisfied.
- (2) The first condition is that—
- (a) the school concerned ceases to be an Academy, and
 - (b) immediately before the school ceases to be an Academy the interest is held by a person for the purposes of the Academy.
- (3) The second condition is that, although the school concerned continues to be an Academy, the interest ceases to be held for the purposes of the Academy.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) This paragraph applies whether or not the transfer is made by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (2) applies whether or not, on the school ceasing to be an Academy, it simultaneously ceases to function as a school.
- (6) The Secretary of State may make a scheme providing for the transfer of the interest—
 - (a) from the person holding it;
 - (b) to the authority from which the transfer mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) was made.
- (7) A scheme may include such supplementary, incidental, consequential or transitional provisions as the Secretary of State thinks are appropriate.
- (8) A scheme comes into force on the day it specifies for it to come into force.
- (9) When a scheme comes into force it has effect to transfer (in accordance with its provisions) the interest to which it applies.
- (10) A transfer made by virtue of a scheme is binding on all persons (as well as on the authority and the transferee) even if, apart from this sub-paragraph, it would have required the consent or concurrence of any person.

Disapplication of rule against perpetuities

- 9 Where—
- (a) a freehold or leasehold interest in land is transferred for no consideration from a local authority to a person for the purposes of an Academy (whether or not by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1), and
 - (b) at any time on or after the day on which this Schedule comes into force the authority is granted an option to make a re-acquisition of the interest (subject to whatever conditions),
- the rule against perpetuities does not apply to the option.

Other Acts

- 10 (1) Where a lease is granted by or transferred from a local authority to a person for the purposes of an Academy on or after the day on which this Schedule comes into force, section 153 of the Law of Property Act 1925 (c.20) (enlargement of leases granted for no rent etc) does not apply to permit that person to enlarge the term under the lease.
- (2) Section 123(2) of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70) (disposal for consideration less than the best reasonably obtainable) does not apply to a disposal to a person for the purposes of an Academy.
 - (3) Section 123(2A) of that Act (disposal of open space requires certain procedures) does not apply to a disposal which is made—
 - (a) to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
 - (b) for no consideration.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) Section 77(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (restriction on disposal of playing fields) does not apply to a disposal which is made—
- (a) by a local authority (within the meaning of that section) to a person for the purposes of an Academy, and
 - (b) for no consideration.

Regulations

- 11 Regulations under this Schedule may in particular include—
- (a) provision requiring a person to be appointed by the Secretary of State in connection with the proposed making of a scheme under paragraph 1;
 - (b) provision requiring the appointed person to identify the interests, rights and liabilities to be the subject of a scheme under paragraph 1;
 - (c) provision requiring the authority concerned to provide the appointed person with such documents as he may require in order to identify the interests, rights and liabilities to be the subject of a scheme under paragraph 1;
 - (d) provision requiring an authority whose interest is (or is to be) transferred by virtue of a scheme under paragraph 1 to execute instruments and deliver certificates for the purposes of the enactments relating to registered land;
 - (e) provision treating such an authority as having given acknowledgement in writing of the right to production of documents;
 - (f) provision that consent under paragraph 2 is to be sought in a specified way;
 - (g) provision that information is to be given under paragraph 7 in a specified way.

Class consents

- 12 For the purposes of paragraphs 2(2) and 5(2), the consent of the Secretary of State—
- (a) may be given in relation to a particular case or class of case, and
 - (b) may be given subject to conditions.

Interpretation

- 13 A dwelling-house used by an authority for occupation by a person employed to work at a school is to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as used for the purposes of the school.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

PART 2

MISCELLANEOUS

Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43)

- 2 In section 98 of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (definitions), in subsection (2)(e), for the words from “city academy” to “1996” there is substituted “Academy”.

Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 (1991 No. 2)

- 3 (1) Section 10 of the Diocesan Boards of Education Measure 1991 is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), in the definition of “church school”, at the end there is inserted “or an Academy falling within subsection (1A)”.
- (3) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(1A) An Academy falls within this subsection if—
- (a) at least one member of its governing body is appointed to that body to represent the interests of the Church of England;
 - (b) the premises provided for the Academy when first established were so provided on trust that, in the event of the discontinuance of the Academy, the property concerned was to be held for, or sold and the proceeds of sale applied for, the benefit of the Church of England; or
 - (c) the premises provided for the Academy when first established were so provided on trust in connection with the provision of education, or the conduct of an educational institution, in accordance with the tenets of the Church of England.”

Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13)

- 4 In section 54 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (duty to give information), in subsection (1)(b), for “city academy” there is substituted “Academy”.

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

- 5 (1) The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 has effect subject to the following amendments.
- (2) In section 28E (accessibility strategies)—
- (a) in subsection (5)(b), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”;
 - (b) in subsection (6)(b), after “independent school” there is inserted “(other than an Academy)”, and
 - (c) in subsection (8), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”.
- (3) In section 28K (admissions), in subsections (2)(b) and (5)(b), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (4) In section 28L (exclusions), in subsections (2)(b) and (5)(b), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”.
- (5) In section 28Q (interpretation), subsection (12) shall cease to have effect.

Education Act 1996 (c. 56)

- 6 (1) The Education Act 1996 has effect subject to the following amendments.
- (2) In section 2 (definition of “secondary education” etc), in subsection (2A)(a), after “local education authority” there is inserted “or is an Academy”.
- (3) In section 316 (children with special educational needs), in subsection (4)(b)(iii), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”.
- (4) In section 483A (special educational needs)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(b), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”, and
 - (b) subsection (7) shall cease to have effect.
- (5) In section 537 (power to require information), in subsection (7)(b), for “city academy” there is substituted “Academy”.
- (6) In section 541 (power to require provision of information), in subsection (1)(b), for “city academy” there is substituted “Academy”.
- (7) In section 550B (detention), in subsection (2)(c), for “city academy” there is substituted “Academy”.
- (8) In section 580 (index), at the appropriate place in the table there is inserted—

“Academy

section 482”

School Inspections Act 1996 (c. 57)

F47

Textual Amendments

F4 Sch. 7 para. 7 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4; S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

Education Act 1997 (c. 44)

- 8 In section 43 of the Education Act 1997 (provision of careers education), in subsection (2)(d), for “city academies” there is substituted “Academies”.

School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31)

- 9 In section 110 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (home-school agreements), in subsection (1)(b), for “a city academy” there is substituted “an Academy”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21)

- 10 In section 117 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (information and access), in subsection (3)(b), for “city academies” there is substituted “ Academies ”.

^{F5}SCHEDULE 8

Section 70

Textual Amendments

- F5** Sch. 8 repealed (1.9.2006) by Education Act 2005 (c. 18), ss. 66(14), 125(4), Sch. 19 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/2129, art. 4 (with art. 6)

SCHEDULE 9

Section 72

PROPOSALS RELATING TO SIXTH FORMS: IMPLEMENTATION

Commencement Information

- I78** Sch. 9 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/124, art. 4
I79 Sch. 9 in force at 1.8.2004 for W. by S.I. 2004/1728, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1

In the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21), after Schedule 7 there is inserted—

“SCHEDULE 7A

IMPLEMENTATION OF PROPOSALS FOR RESTRUCTURING SIXTH-FORM EDUCATION

Introductory

- 1 (1) This Schedule applies to proposals under section 113A which have been approved by the relevant authority under that section.
- (2) The proposals shall (subject to the following provisions of this paragraph) be implemented in the form in which they were so approved, in accordance with this Schedule.
- (3) At the request of any persons prescribed in regulations, the relevant authority—
- (a) may modify the proposals after consulting such persons as may be prescribed, and
 - (b) where any approval was given subject to the occurrence of a specified event, may specify a later date by which the event in question must occur.
- (4) If the relevant authority is satisfied, after consulting such persons as may be prescribed in regulations—
- (a) that implementation of the proposals would be unreasonably difficult, or

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) that circumstances have so altered since approval was given under section 113A that implementation of the proposals would be inappropriate, it may determine that sub-paragraph (2) shall cease to apply to the proposal.

Proposals to establish a school

- 2 To the extent that the proposals are proposals to establish a school, they shall be implemented by the local education authority which it is proposed shall establish the school.

Proposals to make a prescribed alteration

- 3 (1) To the extent that the proposals are proposals to make a prescribed alteration to a school, they shall be implemented in accordance with this paragraph.
- (2) Where the proposals relate to a community school, they shall be implemented by the local education authority which maintains the school.
- (3) Where the proposals relate to a voluntary aided school, they shall be implemented—
- (a) so far as relating to the provision of any relevant premises, by the local education authority which maintains the school, and
- (b) otherwise, by the governing body of the school.
- (4) For this purpose “relevant premises” means—
- (a) in relation to a local education authority in England, playing fields, and
- (b) in relation to a local education authority in Wales—
- (i) playing fields, or
- (ii) buildings which are to form part of the school premises but are not to be school buildings (within the meaning of the Education Act 1996).
- (5) Where the proposals relate to any other school, they shall be implemented by the local education authority which maintains the school and the governing body of the school, respectively, to such extent (if any) as the proposals provide for each of them to do so.

Proposals to discontinue a school

- 4 To the extent that the proposals are proposals to discontinue a school they shall be implemented—
- (a) in the case of proposals relating to a community or community special school, by the local education authority which maintains the school, and
- (b) in any other case, by the local education authority which maintains the school and the governing body of the school.

Supplementary

- 5 Where a local education authority are required under this Schedule to provide a site for a foundation or voluntary controlled school or foundation special school (or a proposed such school), paragraph 16 of Schedule 6 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 applies as it applies in the circumstances mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph.
- 6 Paragraph 17 of that Schedule (grants in respect of certain expenditure relating to voluntary aided schools) applies in relation to the obligation under paragraph 3(3)(b) of

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

this Schedule as it applies in relation to the obligations referred to in sub-paragraph (1) (a) of that paragraph 17.

- 7 Paragraph 18 of that Schedule (assistance from LEA in respect of voluntary aided schools) applies in relation to obligations imposed on the governing body of a voluntary aided school under this Schedule as it applies in relation to the obligations referred to in that paragraph, and paragraph 20 of that Schedule (duty on LEA to transfer interest in premises provided under paragraph 18) applies accordingly.”

SCHEDULE 10

Section 75

ESTABLISHMENT ETC OF SCHOOLS: PROCEDURAL CHANGES

Proposals for establishment, alteration and discontinuance of schools

- 1 Schedule 6 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (procedure and implementation of statutory proposals) has effect subject to the following amendments.

Commencement Information

- I80** Sch. 10 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 10 para. 1 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I81** Sch. 10 para. 1 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

- 2 (1) Paragraph 2 (objections) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1), after “objections to” there is inserted “, or comments on, ”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (a)—
- (i) after “objections” there is inserted “ or comments ”, and
- (ii) for “the objection period” there is substituted “the representation period”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b)—
- (i) after “objections” there is inserted “ or comments ”, and
- (ii) for “the objection period” there is substituted “ the representation period ”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3), after “objections” there is inserted “ or comments ”.

Commencement Information

- I82** Sch. 10 para. 2 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#) (with [art. 5](#))
- I83** Sch. 10 para. 2 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 3 (1) Paragraph 3 (approval of proposals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(a)(i), for “objection period” there is substituted “ representation period ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) In sub-paragraph (2), at the end there is inserted “or
 (d) if the committee think it appropriate to do so, and subject to regulations, refer them to the adjudicator.”
- (4) After sub-paragraph (6) there is inserted—
- “(6A) Where the committee reject proposals published by promoters for the establishment of a new foundation or voluntary school, the committee shall, if the promoters so request, refer the proposals to the adjudicator.
- (6B) Sub-paragraph (6A) does not apply in relation to proposals published—
- (a) by the Diocesan Board of Education for a diocese of the Church of England, or
- (b) by or on behalf of the Bishop and Trustees of a diocese of the Roman Catholic Church.
- (6C) Where the committee reject proposals to make an alteration to a school which are published by the governing body of the school under section 28, and—
- (a) the school is of a prescribed description, and
- (b) the alteration is of a prescribed description,
- the committee shall refer the proposals to the adjudicator if the governing body so request.”
- (5) In sub-paragraph (7)—
- (a) for “sub-paragraph (5) or (6)” there is substituted “ this paragraph ”, and
- (b) after “sub-paragraphs (2) to (4)” there is inserted “ (other than sub-paragraph (2)(d)) ”.

Commencement Information

I84 Sch. 10 para. 3 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3 (with art. 5)

I85 Sch. 10 para. 3 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

- 4 (1) Paragraph 4 (determination by LEA whether to implement proposals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1)(b), for “objection period” there is substituted “ representation period ”.
- (3) After sub-paragraph (4) there is inserted—
- “(4A) The authority may, if they think it appropriate to do so and subject to regulations, refer to the relevant committee any proposals which would otherwise fall to be determined by the authority under this paragraph.”
- (4) In sub-paragraph (5), after paragraph (b) there is inserted “or
 (c) the authority refer the proposals to the relevant committee,”.

Commencement Information

I86 Sch. 10 para. 4 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3 (with art. 5)

I87 Sch. 10 para. 4 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 5 (1) Paragraph 5 (requirement to implement proposals) is amended as follows.
- (2) After sub-paragraph (6) there is inserted—
- “(6A) The committee may, if they think it appropriate to do so and subject to regulations, refer to the adjudicator any matter which would otherwise fall to be determined by the committee under this paragraph.”
- (3) In sub-paragraph (7), for “sub-paragraph (5) or (6)” there is substituted “ this paragraph ”.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (9), the words “or (8)” shall cease to have effect.
- (5) After that sub-paragraph there is inserted—
- “(10) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (8), sub-paragraph (1) ceases to apply to any proposals approved by the relevant committee under paragraph 3, those proposals shall be regarded as requiring fresh approval under that paragraph.
- (11) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (8), sub-paragraph (1) ceases to apply to any proposals approved by the adjudicator under paragraph 3, those proposals fall to be considered afresh by him under that paragraph (and sub-paragraph (7) of that paragraph shall accordingly apply).”

Commencement Information

I88 Sch. 10 para. 5 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

I89 Sch. 10 para. 5 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 6 (1) Paragraph 10 (requirement to implement proposals in Wales) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (6), the words “or (5)” shall cease to have effect.
- (3) After that sub-paragraph there is inserted—
- “(7) Where, by virtue of sub-paragraph (5), sub-paragraph (1) ceases to apply to any proposals, those proposals shall be regarded as requiring fresh approval under paragraph 8.”

Commencement Information

I90 Sch. 10 para. 6 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 10 para. 6 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

I91 Sch. 10 para. 6 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

Proposals for rationalisation of school places

- 7 Schedule 7 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) (procedure on proposals for rationalisation of school places) has effect subject to the following amendments.

Commencement Information

I92 Sch. 10 para. 7 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I93 Sch. 10 para. 7 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

- 8 In paragraph 7 (objections)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), after “objections to” there is inserted “, or comments on,”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), after “Objections” there is inserted “ or comments ”.

Commencement Information

I94 Sch. 10 para. 8 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3 (with art. 5)

I95 Sch. 10 para. 8 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

- 9 (1) Paragraph 8 (approval of proposals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (2), after “must” there is inserted “ (subject to sub-paragraph (2A)) ”.
- (3) After that sub-paragraph there is inserted—
- “(2A) The committee may, if they think it appropriate to do so and subject to regulations, refer to the adjudicator any proposals which would otherwise fall to be dealt with by them under sub-paragraph (2).”
- (4) In sub-paragraph (7), for “sub-paragraph (5) or (6)”, in both places, there is substituted “ this paragraph ”.

Commencement Information

I96 Sch. 10 para. 9 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3

I97 Sch. 10 para. 9 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

- 10 In paragraph 9 (local inquiry), in sub-paragraph (1)—
- (a) for “paragraph 8(5) or (6)” there is substituted “ paragraph 8 ”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), after “objections” (in both places) there is inserted “ or comments ”.

Commencement Information

I98 Sch. 10 para. 10 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3 (with art. 5)

I99 Sch. 10 para. 10 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Proposals in relation to sixth forms

- 11 Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21) (procedure on proposals in relation to inadequate sixth forms) has effect subject to the following amendments.

Commencement Information

I100 Sch. 10 para. 11 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 10 para. 11 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I

I101 Sch. 10 para. 11 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/124, art. 4

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F⁶12

Textual Amendments

F6 Sch. 10 paras. 12-14 repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1080\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1** (with art. 2(3))

F⁶13

Textual Amendments

F6 Sch. 10 paras. 12-14 repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1080\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1** (with art. 2(3))

F⁶14

Textual Amendments

F6 Sch. 10 paras. 12-14 repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1080\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 2 Pt. 1** (with art. 2(3))

15 In paragraph 42 (consideration of proposals in Wales), in sub-paragraph (4), for “be treated as being rejected at that time” there is substituted “ fall to be considered afresh under sub-paragraph (1) ”.

Commencement Information

I102 Sch. 10 para. 15 partly in force; Sch. 10 para. 15 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 10 para. 15 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 4, **Sch. Pt. I**
I103 Sch. 10 para. 15 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), art. 4

SCHEDULE 11

Section 119

SCHOOL TEACHERS’ REVIEW BODY

Membership

- 1 There shall be not less than five or more than nine members of the Body (including the chairman).
- 2 A member shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment (subject to the following provisions of this Schedule).
- 3 A member may resign by notice in writing to the Secretary of State.
- 4 The Secretary of State may by notice in writing dismiss a member if the member—
 - (a) is adjudged bankrupt,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) enters into an arrangement with his creditors, or
 - (c) is, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, unable, unfit or unwilling to perform his duties whether by reason of physical or mental illness or otherwise.
- 5 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24) (disqualifying offices) for the entry relating to the body established under the School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (c. 49) there shall be substituted the following—

“Member, in receipt of remuneration, of the School Teachers’ Review Body.”

Chairman

- 6 The chairman may by notice in writing to the Prime Minister—
- (a) resign as chairman, or
 - (b) resign as chairman and as a member of the Body.
- 7 Paragraph 4 shall apply to the chairman and for that purpose—
- (a) a reference to the Secretary of State shall be taken as a reference to the Prime Minister, and
 - (b) the power may be exercised so as to dismiss the chairman only from that office or also from membership of the Body.
- 8 If the chairman ceases to be a member of the Body he also ceases to be chairman.

Deputy Chairman

- 9 The Secretary of State may appoint a member of the Body to act as deputy chairman.
- 10 The deputy chairman may by notice in writing to the Secretary of State—
- (a) resign as deputy chairman, or
 - (b) resign as deputy chairman and as a member of the Body.
- 11 If the deputy chairman ceases to be a member of the Body he also ceases to be deputy chairman.

Money

- 12 (1) This paragraph applies to—
- (a) a member of the Body;
 - (b) the chairman;
 - (c) the deputy chairman.
- (2) The Secretary of State may pay remuneration and allowances to a person to whom this paragraph applies.
- (3) The Secretary of State may make payments to or in respect of a person to whom this paragraph applies by way of or in connection with—
- (a) a pension;
 - (b) an allowance or gratuity on retirement or death.
- (4) The Secretary of State may pay compensation to a person who ceases to be a member of the Body if the Secretary of State thinks it right by reason of special circumstances.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Proceedings

- 13 The Body shall determine their own proceedings (including any provision for a quorum).
- 14 The validity of proceedings of the Body shall not be affected by—
- (a) a vacancy in the membership,
 - (b) a vacancy in the position of chairman, or
 - (c) a defect in the appointment of a member.

Transitional provision

- 15 An appointment made by the Prime Minister under section 1(1) of the School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (c. 49) shall continue to have effect, subject to paragraphs 3, 4 and 6 to 11, after the commencement of this Schedule.

SCHEDULE 12

Section 148

THE GENERAL TEACHING COUNCILS FOR ENGLAND AND WALES

PART 1

AMENDMENTS OF TEACHING AND HIGHER EDUCATION ACT 1998

- 1 The Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30) is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I104 Sch. 12 para. 1 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 12 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 1 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 12 para. 1 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 2 In section 2 (which relates to the advisory functions of the General Teaching Council for England, and is applied by section 9 in relation to the General Teaching Council for Wales), in subsection (2) before the word “and” immediately following paragraph (e) there is inserted—
- “(ee) the supply of teachers;
 - (ef) the retention of teachers within the teaching profession;
 - (eg) the standing of the teaching profession;”.

Commencement Information

I105 Sch. 12 para. 2 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 12 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 2 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 12 para. 2 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 3 (1) Section 3 (which relates to the registration of teachers with the General Teaching Council for England, and is applied by section 9 in relation to the General Teaching Council for Wales) is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsection (1) for “a register of teachers” there is substituted “ a register for the purposes of this Chapter ”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for “registration” there is substituted “ full or provisional registration ”.
- (4) In subsection (3) for “registration”, where first occurring and in paragraph (b), there is substituted “ full registration ”.
- (5) After subsection (3) there is inserted—
- “(3A) A person is eligible for provisional registration if he satisfies such conditions as may be prescribed.
- (3B) A person is not eligible for provisional registration or full registration unless at the relevant time the Council are or were satisfied as to his suitability to be a teacher.
- (3C) In subsection (3B) “the relevant time” means—
- (a) in relation to an applicant for provisional registration or an applicant for full registration who is already registered with provisional registration, the time of provisional registration, or
- (b) in the case of an applicant for full registration who is not already registered with provisional registration, the time of full registration.
- (3D) Regulations may provide that any prescribed description of person is, or is not, to be taken to be suitable to be a teacher.”
- (6) In subsection (4), for “registration” there is substituted “ full registration ”.

Commencement Information

- I106** Sch. 12 para. 3(1) (2) (4) (6) in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)
- I107** Sch. 12 para. 3(1) in force at 31.5.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/1336, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- I108** Sch. 12 para. 3(3) in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)
- I109** Sch. 12 para. 3(3) in force at 6.11.2006 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2](#)
- I110** Sch. 12 para. 3(5) in force at 31.5.2006 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2006/1336, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- I111** Sch. 12 para. 3(5) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2](#)

- 4 (1) Section 4 (which relates to regulations about the registration of teachers with the General Teaching Council for England, and is applied by section 9 in relation to the General Teaching Council for Wales) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), after paragraph (b) there is inserted—
- “(ba) the service on applicants for registration of notice of the Council’s decision to grant or refuse the application and, in the case of a refusal, of the grounds on which the decision was taken and (where applicable) of the applicant’s right to appeal against the decision under section 4A;”.
- (3) After subsection (4) there is inserted—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(4A) The Council, in exercising any power to fix fees authorised by virtue of subsection (4), shall have regard to the expenditure of the Council in exercising—

- (a) their functions under this Act relating to registration, and
- (b) all other functions conferred on them under this Act or any other enactment.”

(4) After subsection (5) there is inserted—

“(6) In this section “registration” means full registration or provisional registration.”

Commencement Information

- I112** Sch. 12 para. 4 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 4(1)(3) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4, Sch.](#)); Sch. 12 para. 4(1)(3) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I113** Sch. 12 para. 4(2) in force at 31.5.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/1336, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I114** Sch. 12 para. 4(2) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2](#)
- I115** Sch. 12 para. 4(4) in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)
- I116** Sch. 12 para. 4(4) in force at 6.11.2006 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2](#)

5 After section 4 there is inserted—

“4A Appeals against refusal of registration

- (1) Regulations shall make provision for conferring on a person aggrieved by a decision made on relevant grounds to refuse an application made by him for registration under section 3 a right to appeal against the decision to the High Court within 28 days from the date on which notice of the decision is served on him.
- (2) The reference in subsection (1) to a decision made on relevant grounds is to a decision made on the ground that at the relevant time the Council were not satisfied of the applicant’s suitability to be a teacher.
- (3) On such an appeal the Court may make any order which appears appropriate.
- (4) No appeal shall lie from any decision of the Court on such an appeal.”

Commencement Information

- I117** Sch. 12 para. 5 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2](#)

6 After section 6 there is inserted—

“6A Power to promote teaching profession

- (1) The Council may undertake activities designed to promote the standing of the teaching profession.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (1), such activities may include—
- (a) giving advice,
 - (b) organising conferences and lectures, and
 - (c) arranging for the publication of material in any form.”

Commencement Information

I118 Sch. 12 para. 6 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 12 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 6 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 12 para. 6 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 7 In section 9(1) (which lists provisions applying to the General Teaching Council for Wales), for “and section 7” there is substituted—
- “section 6A, and
 section 7.”.

Commencement Information

I119 Sch. 12 para. 7 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 7 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 7 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

I120 [Sch. 12 para. 7](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)

- 8 In section 12 (deduction of fees from salaries etc) in subsection (4), after “section —” there is inserted—
- ““registration” means full registration or provisional registration;”.

Commencement Information

I121 Sch. 12 para. 8 in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)

I122 [Sch. 12 para. 8](#) in force at 6.11.2006 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)

- 9 In section 42 (orders and regulations), in subsection (2) (a) (orders subject to negative resolution procedure), after “section 7 or 8” there is inserted “or paragraph 18 of Schedule 1 ”.

Commencement Information

I123 Sch. 12 para. 9 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 9 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))

- 10 In section 43(1) (general interpretation), in the definition of “registered teacher” after “section 3” there is inserted “ with full or provisional registration ”.

Commencement Information

I124 Sch. 12 para. 10 in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I125 Sch. 12 para. 10 in force at 6.11.2006 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895, art. 2

11 In Schedule 1 (constitution etc. of General Teaching Council for England), after paragraph 17 there is inserted—

“Power to amend Schedule

- 18 (1) The Secretary of State may by order amend the preceding provisions of this Schedule for the purpose of removing or relaxing any control exercisable by him by virtue of any of the provisions of this Schedule specified in sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Those provisions are—
- (a) paragraph 2(3),
 - (b) paragraph 4,
 - (c) paragraph 5,
 - (d) paragraph 6,
 - (e) paragraph 11
 - (f) paragraph 14(2).”

Commencement Information

I126 Sch. 12 para. 11 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 11 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)

12 (1) Schedule 2 (disciplinary powers of Council) is amended as follows.

(2) For paragraph 4 (suspension orders) there is substituted—

- “4 (1) Where a suspension order is made in relation to a person—
- (a) he shall cease to be eligible for registration under section 3, and
 - (b) if he is a registered person at the time when the order is made, his name shall be removed from the register accordingly,
- but, subject to sub-paragraph (2), he shall become so eligible again at the end of such period not exceeding two years as may be specified in the order.
- (2) A suspension order may specify conditions to be complied with by the person to whom the order relates and where it does so—
- (a) that person shall become eligible again for registration under section 3 at the end of the period specified under sub-paragraph (1) only if he has then complied with the conditions; and
 - (b) if he has not then complied with the conditions, he shall not become so eligible again until he has complied with the conditions.
- (3) Sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) of paragraph 3(2) apply in relation to a suspension order as they apply in relation to a conditional registration order.
- (4) A person in relation to whom conditions have been specified in a suspension order may, in accordance with regulations, apply to the Council for them to vary or revoke any of the conditions.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) In paragraph 8 (interpretation), after sub-paragraph (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) References in this Schedule to registration under section 3 are references to registration under that section with full or provisional registration.”

Commencement Information	
I127	Sch. 12 para. 12 partly in force; Sch. 12 para. 12 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 12 para. 12(1)(2) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by S.I. 2002/2439 , art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4 , Sch.); Sch. 12 para. 12(1)(2) in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by S.I. 2002/3185 , art. 5 , Sch. Pt. II
I128	Sch. 12 para. 12(1)(2) in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by S.I. 2002/3185 , art. 5 , Sch. Pt. II
I129	Sch. 12 para. 12(3) in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667 , art. 3
I130	Sch. 12 para. 12(3) in force at 6.11.2006 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895 , art. 2

F7 PART 2

AMENDMENTS OF OTHER ENACTMENTS

Textual Amendments	
F7	Sch. 12 Pt. 2 repealed (6.4.2006) by Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 (c. 15) , s. 178(8), Sch. 17 Pt. 2 ; S.I. 2006/378 , art. 7(f)

F7 13

Commencement Information	
I131	Sch. 12 para. 13 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895 , art. 2

F7 14

Commencement Information	
I132	Sch. 12 para. 14 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895 , art. 2

F7 15

Commencement Information	
I133	Sch. 12 para. 15 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895 , art. 2

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 13

Section 152

REGULATION OF CHILD MINDING AND DAY CARE

Consent to checks on suitability

1 In section 79B of the Children Act 1989 (c. 41) (persons qualified for registration for child minding or day care), after subsection (5) there is inserted—

“(5A) Where, for the purposes of determining a person’s qualification for registration under this Part—

(a) the registration authority requests any person (“A”) to consent to the disclosure to the authority by another person (“B”) of any information relating to A which is held by B and is of a prescribed description, and

(b) A does not give his consent (or withdraws it after having given it), the registration authority may, if regulations so provide and it thinks it appropriate to do so, regard A as not suitable to look after children under the age of eight, or not suitable to be in regular contact with such children.”

Commencement Information

I134 Sch. 13 para. 1 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 13 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 13 para. 1 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Suspension of registration

2 In section 79H of that Act (suspension of registration), after subsection (2) there is inserted—

“(3) A person registered under this Part for child minding by the Chief Inspector shall not act as a child minder in England at a time when that registration is suspended in accordance with regulations under this section.

(4) A person registered under this Part for child minding by the Assembly shall not act as a child minder in Wales at a time when that registration is so suspended.

(5) A person registered under this Part for providing day care on any premises shall not provide day care on those premises at any time when that registration is so suspended.

(6) If any person contravenes subsection (3), (4) or (5) without reasonable excuse, he shall be guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.”

Commencement Information

I135 Sch. 13 para. 2 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 13 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 13 para. 2 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Rights of appeal in relation to registration

- 3 (1) Section 79M of that Act (appeals) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (b) there is inserted “or
- (c) a determination made by the registration authority under this Part (other than one falling within paragraph (a) or (b)) which is of a prescribed description.”.
- (3) In subsection (2)(a), after “order” there is inserted “ or determination ”.

Commencement Information

I136 Sch. 13 para. 3 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 13 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 13 para. 3 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Inspections by Chief Inspector

- 4 (1) Section 79Q of that Act (inspection of childminding and day care) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (2), for the words from “secure” to the end there is substituted “ at prescribed intervals inspect, or secure the inspection by a registered inspector of, any child minding provided in England by a registered person ”.
- (3) In subsection (3), for the words from “secure” to the end there is substituted “ at prescribed intervals inspect, or secure the inspection by a registered inspector of, any day care provided by a registered person on any premises in England ”.

Commencement Information

I137 Sch. 13 para. 4 in force at 2.9.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)

I138 Sch. 13 para. 4 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Rights of entry etc.

- 5 (1) Section 79U of that Act (rights of entry etc.) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for “An authorised inspector” there is substituted “ Any person authorised for the purposes of this subsection by the registration authority ”.
- (3) In subsection (2), for “an authorised inspector” there is substituted “ a person who is authorised for the purposes of this subsection by the registration authority ”.
- (4) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(2A) Authorisation under subsection (1) or (2)—
- (a) may be given for a particular occasion or period;
- (b) may be given subject to conditions.”
- (5) In subsection (3), for the words from “An inspector” to “may-” there is substituted “ A person entering premises under this section may (subject to any conditions imposed under subsection (2A)(b))— ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(6) Subsection (5) shall cease to have effect.

(7) In subsection (9), the definition of “authorised inspector” shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I139 Sch. 13 para. 5 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 13 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 13 para. 5 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#); Sch. 13 para. 5 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Disqualification for registration

6 In paragraph 4 of Schedule 9A to that Act (disqualification for registration for child minding and day care), after sub-paragraph (3) there is inserted—

“(3A) Regulations under this paragraph may provide for a person not to be disqualified for registration by reason of any fact which would otherwise cause him to be disqualified if—

- (a) he has disclosed the fact to the registration authority, and
- (b) the registration authority has consented in writing to his registration and has not withdrawn that consent.”

Commencement Information

I140 Sch. 13 para. 6 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 13 para. 6 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 13 para. 6 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Disclosure of criminal record

F87

Textual Amendments

F8 Sch. 13 para. 7 repealed (6.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), [art. 7\(f\)](#)

F98

Textual Amendments

F9 Sch. 13 para. 8 repealed (6.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\)](#), s. 178(8), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378](#), [art. 7\(f\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

SCHEDULE 14

Section 155

INSPECTION OF NURSERY EDUCATION

Conduct of inspections by Inspectorate

F10₁

Textual Amendments
F10 Sch. 14 para. 1 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3, Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

Registration of inspectors

- 2 (1) Paragraph 8 of that Schedule (registration of inspectors) is amended as follows.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (3), for “(5)(c)” there is substituted “ (5B) ”.
- (3) For sub-paragraphs (4) and (5) there is substituted—
- “(4) Subject to that, the Chief Inspector shall register such persons as he considers appropriate.
- (5) The factors which the Chief Inspector may take into account for the purposes of sub-paragraph (4) include the extent to which there is a need for registered inspectors in any part of England and Wales.
- (5A) The Chief Inspector may require payment of a fee before registering a person under sub-paragraph (4).
- (5B) Registration under sub-paragraph (4) may be subject to such conditions as the Chief Inspector considers it appropriate to impose.”
- (4) In sub-paragraphs (6) and (7), for “(5)(c)” there is substituted “ (5B) ”.
- (5) Sub-paragraph (9) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information
I141 Sch. 14 para. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 14 para. 2 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#)
I142 Sch. 14 para. 2 in force at 1.9.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728, art. 5, Sch. Pt. 2](#)

- 3 In paragraph 9 of that Schedule (removal from register), in sub-paragraphs (2)(c) and (4), for “paragraph 8(5)(c)” there is substituted “ paragraph 8(5B) ”.

Commencement Information
I143 Sch. 14 para. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 14 para. 3 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#)
I144 Sch. 14 para. 3 in force at 1.9.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728, art. 5, Sch. Pt. 2](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 4 In section 79P(3) of the Children Act 1989 (c. 41) (early years child care inspectorate), for “to (9)” there is substituted “ to (8) ”.

Commencement Information

I145 Sch. 14 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 14 para. 4 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)

I146 Sch. 14 para. 4 in force at 1.9.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

Appeals

F115

Textual Amendments

F11 Sch. 14 paras. 5-7 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

F116

Textual Amendments

F11 Sch. 14 paras. 5-7 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

F117

Textual Amendments

F11 Sch. 14 paras. 5-7 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

SCHEDULE 15

Section 187

EDUCATION ACTION ZONES

Introductory

- 1 Chapter 3 of Part 1 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I147 Sch. 15 para. 1 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))

I148 Sch. 15 para. 1 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Establishment of education action zones

- 2 (1) In section 10, in subsection (1) for “maintained schools” there is substituted “eligible schools”.
- (2) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(1A) For the purposes of subsection (1) “eligible school” means—
- (a) a maintained school;
- (b) a nursery school;
- (c) a pupil referral unit; or
- (d) an independent school.”
- (3) Subsection (3) of that section is omitted.
- (4) In subsection (4) of that section, for “, (2) or (3)” there is substituted “ or (2) ”.
- (5) In subsection (6) of that section, for paragraphs (a) and (b) there is substituted—
- “(a) references to a governing body—
- (i) in relation to an independent school (other than an Academy, city technology college or city college for the technology of the arts), are to the proprietor of the school, and
- (ii) in relation to a new school, include the temporary governing body of the school;
- (b) “participating school”, in relation to an education action zone, means one of the schools that—
- (i) for the time being is included in the order under subsection (1), or
- (ii) has been added to the zone by virtue of section 11B, other than a school that has been removed from the zone in accordance with section 11C;
- (c) “pupil referral unit” has the same meaning as in section 19 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56);
- (d) “new school” has the meaning given in section 72(3).”
- (6) Subsection (7) of that section is omitted.

Commencement Information

I149 Sch. 15 para. 2 in force (except for the words “(b) a nursery school”) at 1.10.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))

I150 Sch. 15 para. 2 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

I151 Sch. 15 para. 2(2) in force at 1.9.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

Constitution of Education Action Forum

- 3 In section 11, the following provisions are omitted—
- (a) in subsection (2) the words from “and” to the end, and
- (b) subsection (3).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I152 Sch. 15 para. 3 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)

I153 Sch. 15 para. 3 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

4 After that section there is inserted—

“11A Constitution of Education Action Forum

- (1) The members of an Education Action Forum must include—
 - (a) one person appointed by the governing body of each of the participating schools, unless the governing body of any such school choose not to make such an appointment, and
 - (b) one or two persons appointed by the Secretary of State, unless he chooses not to make such appointments.
- (2) Subject to that, an Education Action Forum—
 - (a) shall initially be constituted in accordance with the order under section 10(1), and
 - (b) may subsequently alter its membership (as set out in that order or as previously altered under this paragraph).
- (3) In subsection (2) the references to altering the Forum’s membership include—
 - (a) altering the number of members, and
 - (b) altering who may appoint members.
- (4) An alteration may be made under subsection (2)(b) only if it is made—
 - (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
 - (b) with the consent of the Secretary of State.”

Commencement Information

I154 Sch. 15 para. 4 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)

I155 Sch. 15 para. 4 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Expansion or reduction of zone

5 After section 11A (inserted by paragraph 4) there is inserted—

“11B Expansion of zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone may add—
 - (a) any eligible school (within the meaning of section 10(1A)), or
 - (b) any new school which has a temporary governing body, to the zone.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) But a school may be added under this section only if it is added—
 - (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
 - (b) with the consent of the governing body of the school and of the Secretary of State.
- (3) For the purposes of this section references to a school being added to an education action zone are to it becoming one of the schools which constitute collectively the zone.

11C Removal from zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone may remove a participating school from the zone.
- (2) But a school may be removed under this section only if it is removed—
 - (a) in accordance with any procedural requirements specified for the purposes of this section in regulations under Schedule 1, and
 - (b) with the consent of the Secretary of State.
- (3) For the purposes of this section references to a school being removed from an education action zone are to it ceasing to be one of the schools which constitute collectively the zone.”

Commencement Information

I156 Sch. 15 para. 5 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)

I157 Sch. 15 para. 5 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Information relating to changes to zone or Forum

6 After section 11C (inserted by paragraph 5) there is inserted—

“11D Information relating to a Forum and its zone

- (1) An Education Action Forum established for an education action zone must provide the Secretary of State with details of—
 - (a) any alteration made to its constitution under section 11A(2)(b),
 - (b) any addition of a school to the zone under section 11B, and
 - (c) any removal of a school from the zone under section 11C.
- (2) The Forum must also, on a request being made by any person, provide him with—
 - (a) the name of each member of the Forum and of the person or body that appointed him,
 - (b) the name of any other person or body entitled to appoint a member, and
 - (c) the name of each participating school in relation to the zone.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) But the duty under subsection (2) is subject, in such circumstances as the Forum may determine, to the payment by the person concerned of a reasonable fee determined by the Forum.”

Commencement Information

- I158** Sch. 15 para. 6 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)
I159 Sch. 15 para. 6 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Functions of Education Action Forum

7 After section 12(1) there is inserted—

“(1A) With the consent of the Secretary of State, a Forum may also carry on any other activities which it considers will promote the provision of, or access to, education whether in a participating school or otherwise.”

Commencement Information

- I160** Sch. 15 para. 7 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)
I161 Sch. 15 para. 7 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

Transitional provision

- 8 (1) Any provision of an order under section 10 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) having effect immediately before the commencement of this Schedule which requires the Forum to include one or two persons appointed by the Secretary of State shall be read as if it were a provision having the same effect as section 11A(1)(b) of that Act.
- (2) Any order under subsection (3) of section 10 of that Act which has effect immediately before the commencement of this Schedule shall continue to have effect on or after that time notwithstanding the repeal by this Act of that subsection.
- (3) Until such time as section 67 of this Act comes into force, the reference in section 10(6)(a)(i) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) to an Academy shall be read as a reference to a city academy.
- (4) Where before the commencement of this Schedule—
- (a) an education action zone has been established by an order under section 10(1) of that Act, and
 - (b) the membership of the Forum set out in that order has been altered by virtue of section 14 of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30),
- the powers to alter the Forum’s membership conferred by section 11A of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 are powers to alter the membership as so amended.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I162** Sch. 15 para. 8 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3 (with transitional provisions and savings in art. 4, Sch.)
- I163** Sch. 15 para. 8 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

SCHEDULE 16

SCHEDULE 17

Section 189

AMENDMENTS OF PART 5 OF EDUCATION ACT 1997

F12 ...

F12₁

Textual Amendments

- F12** Sch. 17 paras. 1-4 and cross-heading repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 (c. 22), s. 269(4), Sch. 16 Pt. 4; S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1; S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2(a)

F12₂

Textual Amendments

- F12** Sch. 17 paras. 1-4 and cross-heading repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 (c. 22), s. 269(4), Sch. 16 Pt. 4; S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1; S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2(a)

F12₃

Textual Amendments

- F12** Sch. 17 paras. 1-4 and cross-heading repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 (c. 22), s. 269(4), Sch. 16 Pt. 4; S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1; S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2(a)

F12₄

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F12 Sch. 17 paras. 1-4 and cross-heading repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by [Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 269(4), [Sch. 16 Pt. 4](#); S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, [Sch. 1](#); S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2(a)

Textual Amendments

F12 Sch. 17 paras. 1-4 and cross-heading repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by [Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 269(4), [Sch. 16 Pt. 4](#); S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, [Sch. 1](#); S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2(a)

The Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales

- 5 (1) Section 29 of the Education Act 1997 (functions of the Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales in relation to curriculum and assessment) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) for the words from “with respect to” to the end there is substituted “with respect to—
- (a) pupils at maintained schools in Wales who have not ceased to be of compulsory school age,
 - (b) pupils at maintained nursery schools in Wales, and
 - (c) children for whom funded nursery education is provided in Wales otherwise than at a maintained school or maintained nursery school.”
- (3) In subsection (2)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), for “such schools” there is substituted “maintained schools or maintained nursery schools”, and
 - (b) paragraph (f) and the word “and” immediately preceding it are omitted.
- (4) After subsection (2) there is inserted—
- “(2A) In subsection (2) references to the curriculum for a maintained nursery school include references to the curriculum for any funded nursery education provided as mentioned in subsection (1)(c); and references to assessment in schools include references to assessment in funded nursery education.”
- (5) Subsections (3) and (4) are omitted.
- (6) At the end of subsection (5) there is inserted “; and “funded nursery education” has the meaning given by section 98 of the Education Act 2002;”.

Commencement Information

I164 Sch. 17 para. 5 partly in force; Sch. 17 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 17 para. 5(1)-(4)(6) in force at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 4, [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 6 In any order made before the commencement of this paragraph under section 30(1) of the Education Act 1997 (c. 44) (power to confer functions on Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales) any reference to functions falling

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

within paragraph (f) of section 24(2) of that Act is to be taken to be a reference to those functions as extended by virtue of paragraph 2 of this Schedule.

7 (1) Section 32 of the Education Act 1997 (supplementary provisions relating to discharge by Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales of their functions) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (3), the words “or approve” and the words “and subject to such conditions” are omitted.

(3) After that subsection there is inserted—

“(3A) Where in carrying out those functions the Authority accredit any qualification, they may, at the time of accreditation or later, impose such conditions on accreditation or continued accreditation as they may determine.”

(4) In subsection (4), for paragraph (b) there is substituted—

“(b) requiring rights of entry to premises and to inspect and copy documents so far as necessary for the Authority—

(i) to satisfy themselves that the appropriate standards are being maintained, in relation to the award or authentication of the qualification in question, by the persons receiving the accreditation, or

(ii) to determine whether to impose a condition falling within paragraph (a) and if so what that condition should be.”

8 After section 32 of the Education Act 1997 there is inserted—

“32A Power of Authority to give directions

(1) If it appears to the Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales—

(a) that any person (in this section referred to as “the awarding body”) who, either alone or jointly with others, awards or authenticates any qualification accredited by the Authority has failed or is likely to fail to comply with any condition subject to which the accreditation has effect, and

(b) that the failure—

(i) prejudices or would be likely to prejudice the proper award or authentication of the qualification, or

(ii) prejudices or would be likely to prejudice persons who might reasonably be expected to seek to obtain the qualification,

the Authority may direct the awarding body to take or refrain from taking specified steps with a view to securing compliance with the conditions subject to which the accreditation has effect.

(2) It shall be the duty of the awarding body to comply with any direction under this section.

(3) Any direction under this section is enforceable, on the application of the Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales, by a mandatory order.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I164 Sch. 17 para. 5 partly in force; Sch. 17 para. 5 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 17 para. 5(1)-(4)(6) in force at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

F13

...

F13

.....

Textual Amendments

F13 Sch. 17 para. 9 and heading repealed (1.4.2010) by [Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(c. 22\)](#), s. 269(4), [Sch. 16 Pt. 4](#); [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

SCHEDULE 18

Section 195

SPECIAL EDUCATIONAL NEEDS TRIBUNAL FOR WALES

Special Educational Needs

1 The Education Act 1996 (c. 56) is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I165 Sch. 18 para. 1 in force at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

2 In section 313 (code of practice), for subsection (5) there is substituted—

“(5) In this Part (except sections 333 to 336), “the Tribunal”, in relation to an appeal, means—

- (a) where the local education authority concerned is in England, the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal,
- (b) where the local education authority concerned is in Wales, the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales.”

Commencement Information

I166 Sch. 18 para. 2 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

3 In section 326A (unopposed appeals), for subsection (6) there is substituted—

“(6) In this section, “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made—

- (a) in relation to an appeal to the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, by the Secretary of State,
- (b) in relation to an appeal to the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales.”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I167 Sch. 18 para. 3 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

^{F14}4

Textual Amendments

F14 Sch. 18 para. 4 repealed (3.11.2008) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2833\)](#), [art. 1\(1\)](#), [Sch. 3 para. 228\(k\)](#)

^{F15}5

Textual Amendments

F15 Sch. 18 para. 5 repealed (3.11.2008) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2833\)](#), [art. 1\(1\)](#), [Sch. 3 para. 228\(k\)](#)

6 In section 336A, for subsection (2) there is substituted—

- “(2) In subsection (1), “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations made—
- (a) as to orders of the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, by the Secretary of State,
 - (b) as to orders of the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales, by the National Assembly for Wales with the agreement of the Secretary of State.”

Commencement Information

I168 Sch. 18 para. 6 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

Disability Discrimination

7 The Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50) is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I169 Sch. 18 para. 7 in force at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

8 (1) In section 28H (Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal), for subsections (2) and (3) there is substituted—

- “(2) In this Chapter—
- “the Tribunal” means the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal, and
- “the Welsh Tribunal” means the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) In addition to the jurisdiction of those tribunals under Part 4 of the Education Act 1996, each of them is to exercise the jurisdiction conferred on it by this Chapter.”

(2) For the heading of that section there is substituted “ Tribunals ”.

Commencement Information

I170 Sch. 18 para. 8 partly in force; Sch. 18 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see. s. 216; Sch. 18 para. 8 in force for certain purposes at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

I171 Sch. 18 para. 8 in force at 1.9.2003 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III](#)

9 (1) Section 28I (jurisdiction and powers of the Tribunal) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsections (1) and (3), for “Tribunal” there is substituted “ appropriate tribunal ”.

(3) After subsection (4) there is inserted—

“(5) Subject to regulations under section 28J(8), the appropriate tribunal—

(a) for a claim against the responsible body for a school in England, is the Tribunal,

(b) for a claim against the responsible body for a school in Wales, is the Welsh Tribunal.”

Commencement Information

I172 Sch. 18 para. 9 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III](#)

10 (1) Section 28J (procedure) is amended as follows.

^{F16}(2)

(3) In subsection (3) after “Tribunal” there is inserted “ or the Welsh Tribunal ”.

(4) Subsection (4) is omitted.

(5) In subsection (5), after “Tribunal” there is inserted “ or the Welsh Tribunal ”.

(6) In subsection (6), for “Wales” there is substituted “ the Welsh Tribunal ”.

(7) In subsection (7), after “Tribunal” there is inserted “ or the Welsh Tribunal ”.

(8) In subsection (8), at the end there is inserted “, including provision—

(a) for determining the appropriate tribunal for the purposes of section 28I for such a claim, and

(b) for the transfer of proceedings between the Tribunal and the Welsh Tribunal.”

Textual Amendments

F16 Sch. 18 para. 10(2) repealed (3.11.2008) by [The Transfer of Tribunal Functions Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/2833\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. 3 para. 228\(k\)](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I173 Sch. 18 para. 10 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**

- 11 In section 28M (roles of the Secretary of State and the National Assembly), in subsection (5), after “Tribunal” there is inserted “ or the Welsh Tribunal ”.

Commencement Information

I174 Sch. 18 para. 11 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**

- 12 In Part 3 of Schedule 3 (enforcement and procedure: discrimination in schools), in paragraph 10 after “Tribunal” in each place there is inserted “ or the Welsh Tribunal ”.

Commencement Information

I175 Sch. 18 para. 12 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**

- 13 Section 10 of the Disabled Persons (Services, Consultation and Representation) Act 1986 (c. 33) (consultation on appointments) is not to apply to appointments to the lay panel appointed for the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales under section 333(2) of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56).

Commencement Information

I176 Sch. 18 para. 13 in force at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

Consequential amendments

- 14 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (c. 24) (disqualifying offices) there is inserted in the appropriate place—

“President of the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales, or member of a panel of persons appointed to act as chairman or other member of that Tribunal.”

Commencement Information

I177 Sch. 18 para. 14 in force at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

- 15 In Schedule 1 to the Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c. 53) (bodies subject to the supervision of the Council), in paragraph 40B—
- (a) the existing entry becomes sub-paragraph (a), and
 - (b) after that sub-paragraph there is inserted—
 - “(b) the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales.”

Commencement Information

I178 Sch. 18 para. 15 in force at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 16 In section 42 of the Special Educational Needs and Disability Act 2001 (c. 10), subsection (2) (National Assembly for Wales and functions under section 336 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56)) is omitted.

Commencement Information

I179 Sch. 18 para. 16 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

Saving and transitional provision

- 17 The amendments made by any provision of this Schedule do not affect—
- (a) appeals instituted under Part 4 of the Education Act 1996, or
 - (b) claims made under section 28I of the Special Educational Needs and Disability Act 2001,
- before the coming into force of that provision.

Commencement Information

I180 Sch. 18 para. 17 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

- 18 Regulations made, or having effect as if made, under any of sections 326A and 333 to 336A of the Education Act 1996 in relation to the Special Educational Needs and Disability Tribunal have effect in relation to the Special Educational Needs Tribunal for Wales until superseded by regulations made in relation to that Tribunal, but as if references to the Secretary of State were references to the National Assembly for Wales.

Commencement Information

I181 Sch. 18 para. 18 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

SCHEDULE 19

Section 199

TRANSPORT FOR PERSONS OVER COMPULSORY SCHOOL AGE

- 1 The Education Act 1996 is amended as follows.

Commencement Information

I182 Sch. 19 partly in force; Sch. 19 not in force at Royal assent see s. 216; Sch. 19 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)

I183 Sch. 19 para. 1 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)

I184 Sch. 19 para. 1 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F17 Sch. 19 para. 2 repealed (1.9.2009) by [Learner Travel \(Wales\) Measure 2008 \(nawm 2\)](#), s. 28(2), [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 2009/371](#), art. 2(2), Sch. Pt. 2

3 After section 509 there is inserted—

“509AA Provision of transport etc. for persons of sixth form age

- (1) A local education authority shall prepare for each academic year a transport policy statement complying with the requirements of this section.
- (2) The statement shall specify the arrangements for the provision of transport or otherwise that the authority consider it necessary to make for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training—
 - (a) at schools,
 - (b) at any institution maintained or assisted by the authority which provides further education or higher education (or both),
 - (c) at any institution within the further education sector, or
 - (d) at any establishment (not falling within paragraph (b) or (c)) which is supported by the Learning and Skills Council for England or the National Council for Education and Training for Wales.
- (3) The statement shall specify the arrangements that the authority consider it necessary to make for the provision of financial assistance in respect of the reasonable travelling expenses of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at any establishment such as is mentioned in subsection (2).
- (4) The statement shall specify the arrangements proposed to be made by the governing bodies of—
 - (a) schools maintained by the authority at which education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age is provided, and
 - (b) institutions within the further education sector in the authority’s area,
 for the provision of transport for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at the schools and institutions and for the provision of financial assistance in respect of the travelling expenses of such persons.
- (5) Those governing bodies shall co-operate in giving the local education authority any information and other assistance that is reasonably required by the authority for the performance of their functions under this section and section 509AB.
- (6) The statement shall specify any travel concessions (within the meaning of Part 5 of the Transport Act 1985 (c. 67)) which are to be provided under any scheme established under section 93 of that Act to persons of sixth form age receiving education at any establishment such as is mentioned in subsection (2) above in the authority’s area.
- (7) The authority shall—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) publish the statement, in a manner which they consider appropriate, on or before 31st May in the year in which the academic year in question begins, and
 - (b) make, and secure that effect is given to, any arrangements specified under subsections (2) and (3).
- (8) Nothing in this section prevents a local education authority from making, at any time in an academic year, arrangements—
- (a) which are not specified in the transport policy statement published by the authority for that year, but
 - (b) which they have come to consider necessary for the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3).
- (9) The Secretary of State may, if he considers it expedient to do so, direct a local education authority to make for any academic year—
- (a) arrangements for the provision of transport or otherwise for facilitating the attendance of persons of sixth form age receiving education or training at establishments such as are mentioned in subsection (2), or
 - (b) arrangements for providing financial assistance in respect of the reasonable travelling expenses of such persons,
- which have not been specified in the transport policy statement published by the authority for that academic year.
- (10) The Secretary of State may by order amend subsection (7)(a) by substituting a different date for 31st May.”

Commencement Information

- I185** Sch. 19 partly in force; Sch. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 19 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2953](#), [art. 2](#)
- I186** Sch. 19 para. 3 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)
- I187** Sch. 19 para. 3 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

4 After section 509AA there is inserted—

“509AB Further provision about transport policy statements

- (1) A statement prepared under section 509AA shall state to what extent arrangements specified in accordance with subsection (2) of that section include arrangements for facilitating the attendance at establishments such as are mentioned in that subsection of disabled persons and persons with learning difficulties.
- (2) A statement prepared under that section shall—
- (a) specify arrangements for persons receiving full-time education or training at establishments other than schools maintained by the local education authority which are no less favourable than the arrangements specified for pupils of the same age attending such schools, and
 - (b) specify arrangements for persons with learning difficulties receiving education or training at establishments other than schools

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

maintained by the authority which are no less favourable than the arrangements specified for pupils of the same age with learning difficulties attending such schools.

- (3) In considering what arrangements it is necessary to make for the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3) of section 509AA the local education authority shall have regard (amongst other things) to—
- (a) the needs of those for whom it would not be reasonably practicable to attend a particular establishment to receive education or training if no arrangements were made,
 - (b) the need to secure that persons in their area have reasonable opportunities to choose between different establishments at which education or training is provided,
 - (c) the distance from the homes of persons of sixth form age in their area of establishments such as are mentioned in section 509AA(2) at which education or training suitable to their needs is provided, and
 - (d) the cost of transport to the establishments in question and of any alternative means of facilitating the attendance of persons receiving education or training there.
- (4) In considering whether or not it is necessary to make arrangements for those purposes in relation to a particular person, a local education authority shall have regard (amongst other things)—
- (a) to the nature of the route, or alternative routes, which he could reasonably be expected to take; and
 - (b) to any wish of his parent for him to be provided with education or training at a school, institution or other establishment in which the religious education provided is that of the religion or denomination to which his parent adheres.
- (5) In preparing a statement under section 509AA a local education authority shall have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State under this section.
- (6) In preparing a statement under that section a local education authority shall consult—
- (a) any other local education authority that they consider it appropriate to consult,
 - (b) the governing bodies mentioned in subsection (4) of that section,
 - (c) the Learning and Skills Council for England (in the case of a local education authority in England) or the National Council for Education and Training for Wales (in the case of a local education authority in Wales), and
 - (d) any other person specified by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this section.
- (7) In preparing a statement under that section a local education authority shall also consult—
- (a) where they are the local education authority for a district in a metropolitan county, the Passenger Transport Authority for that county, and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where they are the local education authority for a London borough or the City of London, Transport for London.”

Commencement Information

I188 Sch. 19 partly in force; Sch. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 19 in force for E. at 30.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)

I189 Sch. 19 para. 4 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#)

I190 Sch. 19 para. 4 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

5 After section 509AB there is inserted—

“509AC Interpretation of sections 509AA and 509AB

- (1) For the purposes of sections 509AA and 509AB a person receiving education or training at an establishment is of sixth form age if he is over compulsory school age but—
- is under the age of 19, or
 - has begun a particular course of education or training at the establishment before attaining the age of 19 and continues to attend that course.
- (2) References in section 509AA to an establishment supported by the Learning and Skills Council for England are to any establishment at which education or training is provided by a person to whom that Council secures the provision of financial resources in any of the ways mentioned in section 5(2) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (3) References in section 509AA to an establishment supported by the National Council for Education and Training for Wales are to any establishment at which education or training is provided by a person to whom that Council secures the provision of financial resources in any of the ways mentioned in section 34(2) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (4) References in section 509AB to persons with learning difficulties are to be construed in accordance with section 13(5) and (6) of the Learning and Skills Act 2000.
- (5) In sections 509AA and 509AB and this section—
- “academic year” means any period commencing with 1st August and ending with the next 31st July;
 - “disabled person” has the same meaning as in the Disability Discrimination Act 1995;
 - “establishment” means an establishment of any kind, including a school or institution;
 - “governing body”, in relation to an institution within the further education sector, has the same meaning as in the Further and Higher Education Act 1992.
- (6) The Secretary of State may by order amend the definition of “academic year” in subsection (5).”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I191** Sch. 19 partly in force; Sch. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 19 in force for E. at 30.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#)
- I192** Sch. 19 para. 5 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#)
- I193** Sch. 19 para. 5 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

- 6 In section 509A (travel arrangements for children receiving nursery education otherwise than at school), after subsection (4) there is inserted—

“(4A) Regulations may require a local education authority to publish, at such times and in such manner as may be prescribed, such information as may be prescribed with respect to the authority’s policy and arrangements relating to the making of provision under this section.”

Commencement Information

- I194** Sch. 19 partly in force; Sch. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 19 in force for E. at 30.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#)
- I195** Sch. 19 para. 6 in force at 20.1.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#)
- I196** Sch. 19 para. 6 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

SCHEDULE 20

Section 206

NUISANCE OR DISTURBANCE ON EDUCATIONAL PREMISES

- 1 (1) Section 547 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (nuisance or disturbance on premises of a school maintained by a local education authority) is amended in accordance with sub-paragraphs (2) to (6).
- (2) In subsection (2), after paragraph (a) there is inserted—
- “(aa) any special school not so maintained, and
 (ab) any independent school.”
- (3) After that subsection there is inserted—
- “(2A) This section also applies to any premises which are—
- (a) provided by a local education authority under section 508, and
 (b) used wholly or mainly in connection with the provision of instruction or leadership in sporting, recreational or outdoor activities.”
- (4) In subsection (3)(b) for “a local education authority have” there is substituted “the appropriate authority has”.
- (5) For subsection (4) there is substituted—
- “(4) In subsection (3) “the appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to premises of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, a local education authority or the governing body,
 (b) in relation to—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) premises of any other school maintained by a local education authority, and
 - (ii) premises provided by a local education authority as mentioned in subsection (2A),
a local education authority, and
 - (c) in relation to premises of a special school which is not so maintained or of an independent school, the proprietor of the school.”
- (6) For subsections (6) and (7) there is substituted—
- “(6) No proceedings for an offence under this section shall be brought by any person other than—
- (a) a police constable, or
 - (b) an authorised person.
- (7) In subsection (6) “authorised person” means—
- (a) in relation to an offence committed on premises of a foundation, voluntary aided or foundation special school, a local education authority or a person whom the governing body have authorised to bring such proceedings,
 - (b) in relation to an offence committed—
 - (i) on premises of any other school maintained by a local education authority, or
 - (ii) on premises provided by a local education authority as mentioned in subsection (2A),
a local education authority, and
 - (c) in relation to an offence committed on premises of a special school which is not so maintained or of an independent school, a person whom the proprietor of the school has authorised to bring such proceedings.”

Commencement Information

I197 Sch. 20 partly in force; Sch. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 20 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with transitional provisions and savings in **art. 4, Sch.**)

I198 Sch. 20 para. 1 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by S.I. 2003/1718, **art. 5, Sch. Pt. II**

- 2 After section 85 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) there is inserted—

“85A Nuisance or disturbance on educational premises

- (1) Any person who without lawful authority is present on premises to which this section applies and causes or permits nuisance or disturbance to the annoyance of persons who lawfully use those premises (whether or not any such persons are present at the time) is guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 2 on the standard scale.
- (2) This section applies to premises, including playing fields and other premises for outdoor recreation, of—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) any institution (other than a school) which is maintained by a local education authority and provides further education or higher education (or both), and
 - (b) any institution within the further education sector.
- (3) If—
- (a) a police constable, or
 - (b) a person whom the appropriate authority have authorised to exercise the power conferred by this subsection,
- has reasonable cause to suspect that any person is committing or has committed an offence under this section, he may remove him from the premises in question.
- (4) In subsection (3) “the appropriate authority” means—
- (a) in relation to premises of an institution such as is mentioned in subsection (2)(a), a local education authority, and
 - (b) in relation to premises of an institution within the further education sector, the governing body.
- (5) No proceedings under this section shall be brought by any person other than—
- (a) a police constable, or
 - (b) an authorised person.
- (6) In subsection (5) “authorised person” means—
- (a) in relation to an offence committed on premises of an institution such as is mentioned in subsection (2)(a), a local education authority, and
 - (b) in relation to an offence committed on premises of an institution within the further education sector, a person whom the governing body have authorised to bring such proceedings.”

Commencement Information

I199 Sch. 20 partly in force; Sch. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 20 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by S.I. 2002/2439, **art. 3** (with transitional provisions and savings in **art. 4, Sch.**)

I200 Sch. 20 para. 2 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by S.I. 2003/1718, **art. 5, Sch. Pt. II**

SCHEDULE 21

Section 215(1)

MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)

1 In section 177 of the Local Government Act 1972 (provisions supplementary to sections 173 to 176 of that Act) for subsection (1A) there is substituted—

“(1A) Subsection (1) has effect without prejudice to the operation of—

- (a) regulations made by virtue of section 94(5C) or 95(3B) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (allowances for admission appeal panels);

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) paragraph 3 of Schedule 4 to that Act (allowances for school organisation committees); and
- (c) regulations made by virtue of section 52(6) of the Education Act 2002 (allowances for exclusion appeal panels).”

Commencement Information

- I201** Sch. 21 para. 1 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 1 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [Sch.](#))
- I202** Sch. 21 para. 1 in force at 9.1.2004 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)
- I203** Sch. 21 para. 1 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7)

- 2 In section 25(5) of the Local Government Act 1974 (certain bodies to which Part 3 of that Act applies)—
- (a) for paragraph (c) there is substituted—
 - “(c) an admission appeal panel constituted in accordance with regulations under section 94(5) or 95(3) of that Act,”
 - and
 - (b) at the end of paragraph (d) there is inserted “and
 - (e) an exclusion appeal panel constituted in accordance with regulations under section 52 of the Education Act 2002.”

Commencement Information

- I204** Sch. 21 para. 21 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 2 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#))
- I205** Sch. 21 para. 2(a) in force at 31.5.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 5\(3\)\(4\)](#))
- I206** Sch. 21 para. 2(b) in force at 9.1.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)

Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65)

F183

Textual Amendments

- F18** Sch. 21 para. 3 repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1080\)](#), [art. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 50](#), [Sch. 2 Pt. 1](#) (with [art. 2\(3\)](#))

Public Passenger Vehicles Act 1981 (c. 14)

- 4 In section 46(3) of the Public Passenger Vehicles Act 1981 (fare-paying passengers on school buses), for the definition of “free school transport” there is substituted—
- ““free school transport” means transport provided by a local education authority free of charge—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(a) in pursuance of arrangements under section 509(1) or (1A) or section 509AA(7)(b) or (9)(a) of the Education Act 1996, or
(b) otherwise, in the exercise of any function of the authority,
for the purpose of facilitating the attendance of persons receiving education or training at any premises;”.

Commencement Information

- I207** Sch. 21 para. 4 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 4 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 4 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#))
I208 Sch. 21 para. 4 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (c. 40)

5 In section 1 of the Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (fees at further and higher education institutions), subsection (6) is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I209** [Sch. 21 para. 5](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)
I210 [Sch. 21 para. 5](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Building Act 1984 (c. 55)

6 In section 4 of the Building Act 1984 (exemption of educational buildings from building regulations), for subsection (1)(a)(ii) there is substituted—
“(ii) particulars submitted and approved under regulations made under section 544 of the Education Act 1996.”.

Commencement Information

- I211** [Sch. 21 para. 6](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)
I212 [Sch. 21 para. 6](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Education Act 1986 (c. 40)

7 In section 1(1) of the Education Act 1986 (payment of grant) for “either of them” there is substituted “that body”.

Commencement Information

- I213** [Sch. 21 para. 7](#) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
I214 [Sch. 21 para. 7](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Education Reform Act 1988 (c. 40)

8 In section 124(1)(ba) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (power of higher education corporation to provide secondary education) for “to persons who would, if they were

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

pupils at a school, be in the fourth key stage” there is substituted “ suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of fourteen years ”.

Commencement Information

I215 Sch. 21 para. 8 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 8 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 8 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 8 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Children Act 1989 (c. 14)

- 9 In Schedule 9A to the Children Act 1989 (child minding and day care for young children), for paragraph 4(2)(b) there is substituted—
- “(b) he is subject to a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002, given on the grounds that he is unsuitable to work with children;”.

Commencement Information

I216 Sch. 21 para. 9 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 9 not in force at Royal Assent, see. s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 9 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I217 Sch. 21 para. 9 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I218 Sch. 21 para. 9 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43)

- 10 In section 98(2) of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (definition of “educational institution”), paragraph (c)(ii) is omitted.

Commencement Information

I219 [Sch. 21 para. 10](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)

I220 [Sch. 21 para. 10](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13)

- 11 In section 18(1)(aa) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (power of further education corporation to provide secondary education) for “to persons who would, if they were pupils at a school, be in the fourth key stage” there is substituted “ suitable to the requirements of persons who have attained the age of fourteen years ”.

Commencement Information

I221 Sch. 21 para. 11 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 11 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 11 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 11 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 12 In section 21 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (initial instruments and articles), in subsection (3), for “Chapter III of Part II of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998” there is substituted “ section 19 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I222 Sch. 21 para. 12 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I223 Sch. 21 para. 12 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 13 Section 23(4)(b) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (institutions maintained by LEAs: Secretary of State must approve exclusion of any property etc. from initial transfer to FE corporation) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I224 Sch. 21 para. 13 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 13 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 13 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 16 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 14 In section 26 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (transfer of staff to further education corporation), subsection (9) is omitted.
- 15 In section 37 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (net expenditure of institution about to join further education sector), the following provisions are omitted—
- (a) subsection (1)(b) and the word “or” immediately preceding it,
 - (b) subsection (8)(a), and
 - (c) subsection (9).

Commencement Information

I225 [Sch. 21 para. 15](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)

I226 [Sch. 21 para. 15](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 16 Sections 39 to 42 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (restrictions on powers of local authorities to dispose of land etc. in period before institution becomes institution within the further education sector) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I227 Sch. 21 para. 16 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 16 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 16 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

^{F19}17

Textual Amendments

F19 Sch. 21 para. 17 repealed (1.4.2010) by [The Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(Consequential Amendments\) \(England and Wales\) Order 2010](#) ([S.I. 2010/1080](#)), [art. 1\(2\)\(a\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 1 para. 102](#), [Sch. 2 Pt. 2](#) (with [art. 2\(3\)](#))

- 18 Section 48 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (transfer of institution to further education sector) shall cease to have effect.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 19 (1) Section 52A of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (duty to safeguard pupils receiving secondary education) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “persons who would, if they were pupils at a school, be in the fourth key stage” there is substituted “persons of compulsory school age”, and
- (b) in paragraph (a), for “in pursuance of arrangements falling within section 18(1)(aa) of this Act” there is substituted “by virtue of section 18(1)(aa) or (ab) of this Act”.
- (3) In subsection (2) for “such pupils” there is substituted “persons of compulsory school age”.

Commencement Information

I228 Sch. 21 para. 19 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 19 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 19 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 19 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 20 In section 54(1) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (duty of certain bodies to give to the Learning and Skills Council for England or National Council for Education and Training for Wales information required for the purposes of the exercise of their functions under Part 1 of that Act), for “this Part of this Act” there is substituted “any enactment”.

Commencement Information

I229 Sch. 21 para. 20 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 20 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 20 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 20 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 21 Section 60 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (saving as to persons detained by order of a court) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I230 Sch. 21 para. 21 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 21 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 21 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 31 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (c. 53)

- 22 In paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 to the Tribunals and Inquiries Act 1992 (tribunals under general supervision of Council on Tribunals) for paragraphs (b) and (c) there is substituted—
- “(b) exclusion appeal panels constituted in accordance with regulations under section 52 of the Education Act 2002;
- (c) admission appeal panels constituted in accordance with regulations under section 94(5) or 95(3) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I231** Sch. 21 para. 22 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 22 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 22 in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#))
- I232** Sch. 21 para. 22 in force at 9.1.2004 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)
- I233** Sch. 21 para. 22 in force at 31.5.2005 for W. in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2005/1395](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Education Act 1994 (c. 30)

- 23 In section 4 of the Education Act 1994 (qualifying activities and eligible institutions), subsection (4) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

- I234** Sch. 21 para. 23 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I235** Sch. 21 para. 23 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 24 In section 14 of the Education Act 1994 (qualification of teachers, etc.), subsections (1), (3) and (4) are omitted.

Commencement Information

- I236** Sch. 21 para. 24 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)

- ^{F20}25

Textual Amendments

- F20** Sch. 21 para. 25 repealed (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(3)(b), [Sch. 19 Pt. 3](#)

Commencement Information

- I237** Sch. 21 para. 25 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50)

- 26 In section 28D of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (accessibility strategies and plans), in subsection (14) after “maintained school” there is inserted “or maintained nursery school”.

Commencement Information

- I238** Sch. 21 para. 26 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I239** Sch. 21 para. 26 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 27 (1) Section 28L of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (exclusions) is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In subsections (2)(a) and (5)(a) for “section 67(1) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998” there is substituted “ section 52(3)(c) of the Education Act 2002 ”.
- (3) In subsection (6), for “paragraph 4 of Schedule 11 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998” there is substituted “ section 19 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I240** Sch. 21 para. 27 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 27 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 27(1)(2) in force for E. at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952](#), [art. 2](#) (with savings and transitional provisions in [art. 3](#), [Sch.](#))
- I241** Sch. 21 para. 27(1)(2) in force at 9.1.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)
- I242** Sch. 21 para. 27(3) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I243** Sch. 21 para. 27(3) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 28 In section 28Q of the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (interpretation of Chapter 1), in subsection (7)—
- (a) for “Schedule 9 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998” there is substituted “ regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002 ”, and
- (b) for “section 36 of that Act” there is substituted “ that section ”.

Commencement Information

- I244** Sch. 21 para. 28 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I245** Sch. 21 para. 28 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 29 In Schedule 4A to the Disability Discrimination Act 1995, in the Table in paragraph 1—
- (a) in paragraph 1, in the first column, after “Maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”, and
- (b) paragraph 3 is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I246** Sch. 21 para. 29 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I247** Sch. 21 para. 29 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18)

- 30 In section 134(1) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (teachers in aided schools) for “section 55(5) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998” there is substituted “ paragraph 7 of Schedule 2 to the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I248** Sch. 21 para. 30 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I249** Sch. 21 para. 30 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 31 In section 139 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (redundancy), in subsection (3), for “governors” there is substituted “governing bodies”.

Commencement Information

I250 Sch. 21 para. 31 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 31 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 31 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 31 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 32 In section 218 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (change of employer), in subsection (7) for “governors” (in both places) there is substituted “governing body”.

Commencement Information

I251 Sch. 21 para. 32 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 32 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 32 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 32 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Education Act 1996 (c. 56)

- 33 In section 2 of the Education Act 1996 (definition of primary, secondary and further education), in subsection (4), after “subsection (2)(b)” there is inserted “or (2A)”.

Commencement Information

I252 Sch. 21 para. 33 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 33 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 33 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 33 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 34 (1) Section 3 of the Education Act 1996 (definition of pupil etc) is amended as follows.
(2) After subsection (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) A person is not for the purposes of this Act to be treated as a pupil at a school merely because any education is provided for him at the school in the exercise of the powers conferred by section 27 of the Education Act 2002 (power of governing body of maintained school to provide community facilities etc).”

- (3) In subsection (3) for “Subsection (1) also applies” there is substituted “Subsections (1) and (1A) also apply”.

Commencement Information

I253 Sch. 21 para. 34 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 34 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 34 in force for E. at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002](#), [art. 4](#)
I254 Sch. 21 para. 34 in force at 1.9.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

- 35 In section 29 of the Education Act 1996 (provision of information by local education authorities), subsection (6) is omitted.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I255 Sch. 21 para. 35 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I256 Sch. 21 para. 35 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

- 36 In section 313 of the Education Act 1996 (Code of Practice), in subsection (1), after “maintained schools” there is inserted “ and maintained nursery schools ”.

Commencement Information

I257 Sch. 21 para. 36 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I258 Sch. 21 para. 36 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

- 37 In section 315 of the Education Act 1996 (review of arrangements), in subsection (2) after “special schools” there is inserted “ and maintained nursery schools ”.

Commencement Information

I259 Sch. 21 para. 37 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I260 Sch. 21 para. 37 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

- 38 In section 316A of the Education Act 1996 (duty to educate children with special educational needs in mainstream school), in subsection (11)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), after “maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”, and
 - (b) in paragraph (b), the words “a maintained nursery school or” are omitted.

Commencement Information

I261 Sch. 21 para. 38 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I262 Sch. 21 para. 38 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

- 39 (1) Section 317 of the Education Act 1996 (duties in relation to pupils with special educational needs) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), for the words from the beginning to “shall” there is substituted “ The governing body of a community, foundation or voluntary school or a maintained nursery school shall ”.
- (3) For subsection (2) there is substituted—
- “(2) In subsection (1)(b) “the responsible person” means the head teacher or the appropriate governor (that is, the chairman of the governing body or, where the governing body have designated another governor for the purposes of this subsection, that other governor).”
- (4) In subsection (3)—
- (a) in paragraph (a), after “voluntary schools” there is inserted “ and maintained nursery schools ”, and
 - (b) paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it are omitted.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F21(5)

Textual Amendments

F21 Sch. 21 para. 39(5) repealed (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 4](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), art. 5 (with [Sch. para. 2](#))

Commencement Information

I263 Sch. 21 para. 39 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 39 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 39(5) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))

I264 Sch. 21 para. 39(1)-(4) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I265 Sch. 21 para. 39(1)(5) in force at 1.9.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

I266 Sch. 21 para. 39(2)-(4) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 40 In section 317A(1) of the Education Act 1996 (duty to inform parent where special educational provision made), in paragraph (a)(i) after “school” there is inserted “ or a maintained nursery school ”.

Commencement Information

I267 Sch. 21 para. 40 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I268 Sch. 21 para. 40 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 41 (1) Section 318 of the Education Act 1996 (provision of goods and services in connection with special educational needs) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after “voluntary schools” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery schools ”.
- (3) In subsection (2), after “voluntary schools” there is inserted “ , maintained nursery schools ”.

Commencement Information

I269 Sch. 21 para. 41 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I270 Sch. 21 para. 41 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 42 In section 321 of the Education Act 1996 (general duty of local education authority towards children for whom they are responsible), in subsection (3), in paragraphs (a) and (b), after “maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”.

Commencement Information

I271 Sch. 21 para. 42 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I272 Sch. 21 para. 42 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 43 In section 324 of the Education Act 1996 (statement of special educational needs), in subsection (5)(b) after “maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I273 Sch. 21 para. 43 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I274 Sch. 21 para. 43 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 44 In section 329A of the Education Act 1996 (review or assessment of educational needs at request of responsible body), in subsection (13)(a), the words “a maintained nursery school or” are omitted.

Commencement Information

I275 Sch. 21 para. 44 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I276 Sch. 21 para. 44 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 45 In section 402 of the Education Act 1996 (obligation to enter pupils for public examinations) in subsection (6), for “and” at the end of paragraph (a) there is substituted—

“(aa) “assessment arrangements” and “fourth key stage”—

- (i) in relation to a school maintained by a local education authority in England, have the same meaning as in Part 6 of the Education Act 2002 (the curriculum in England), and
- (ii) in relation to a school maintained by a local education authority in Wales, have the same meaning as in Part 7 of that Act (the curriculum in Wales); and”.

Commencement Information

I277 Sch. 21 para. 45 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 45 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 45 in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 45 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

I278 Sch. 21 para. 45 in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

- 46 (1) Section 408 of the Education Act 1996 (provision of information) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(a) after “the Learning and Skills Act 2000” there is inserted “ or the relevant provisions of the Education Act 2002 ”.

(3) Subsection (4)(a) is omitted.

(4) After subsection (4) there is inserted—

“(4A) For the purposes of subsection (1) the relevant provisions of the Education Act 2002 are—

- (a) Part 6 (the curriculum in England), and
- (b) sections 97 to 117 (the curriculum in Wales).”

(5) In subsection (6) for “this Part” there is substituted “ Part 6 or 7 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

(6) After subsection (8) there is inserted—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(9) In this section “maintained school” includes a maintained nursery school.”

Commencement Information

- I279** Sch. 21 para. 46 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 46 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 46(1)-(3) in force for E. and Sch. 21 para. 46(4)(5) in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 46(1)-(5) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I280** Sch. 21 para. 46(4)(5) in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)
- I281** Sch. 21 para. 46(6) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I282** [Sch. 21 para. 46\(6\)](#) in force at 1.8.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2008/1728](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

- 47 (1) Section 409 of the Education Act 1996 (complaints and enforcement: maintained schools) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), the words “with the approval of the Secretary of State and” are omitted.
- (3) In subsection (2), after “by the authority” there is inserted “, any maintained nursery school so maintained”.
- (4) In subsection (3), before the “and” at the end of paragraph (a) there is inserted—
- “(aa) any provision which by virtue of section 408(4A) is a relevant provision of the Education Act 2002 for the purposes of section 408(1),”.

Commencement Information

- I283** Sch. 21 para. 47 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 47 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 47(1)(2)(4) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I284** Sch. 21 para. 47(3) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

- 48 (1) Section 451 of the Education Act 1996 (prohibition of charges for provision of education) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (3)(b) for “section 357(1) (implementation of National Curriculum)” there is substituted “ section 88 or 109 of the Education Act 2002 (implementation of National Curriculum for England or National Curriculum for Wales) ”.
- (3) In subsection (4)(b) for “section 357(1)” there is substituted “ section 88 or 109 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I285** Sch. 21 para. 48 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 48 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 48 in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 48 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I286** Sch. 21 para. 48 in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

- 49 (1) Section 484 of the Education Act 1996 (education standards grants) is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) For any reference to the Secretary of State there is substituted a reference to the National Assembly for Wales.
- (3) In subsection (1), after “local education authorities” there is inserted “ in Wales ”.
- (4) In subsection (2) the words “England and” are omitted.
- (5) Subsection (6) is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I287** Sch. 21 para. 49 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 49 not in force at Royal Assent, see. s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 49 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I288** Sch. 21 para. 49 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I289** Sch. 21 para. 49 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#) (with [art. 7](#))

50 In section 499 of the Education Act 1996 (power to direct appointment of members of education committees) for subsection (9) there is substituted—

“(9) In subsections (6) and (8)—

- (a) “maintained school” means a community, foundation or voluntary school, a community or foundation special school or a maintained nursery school, and
- (b) “parent governor” means a governor elected or appointed as a parent governor under regulations made under section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (governing bodies).”

Commencement Information

- I290** Sch. 21 para. 50 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/2071](#), [art. 2](#) (with [art. 2\(2\)](#))
- I291** Sch. 21 para. 50 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

F2251

Textual Amendments

- F22** Sch. 21 para. 51 repealed (1.9.2009) by [Learner Travel \(Wales\) Measure 2008](#) ([nawm 2](#)), s. 28(2), [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 2009/371](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 2](#)

52 In section 512A of the Education Act 1996 (transfer of functions under section 512 to governing bodies) in subsection (7) for the definitions of “delegated budget” and “maintained school” there is substituted—

““delegated budget” has the same meaning as in the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;

“maintained school” means a maintained school as defined by section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 or a maintained nursery school;”

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

- I292** Sch. 21 para. 52 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I293** Sch. 21 para. 52 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

^{F23}53

Textual Amendments

- F23** Sch. 21 para. 53 repealed (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006](#) (c. 40), s. 188(3), [Sch. 18 Pt. 3](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), [art. 7\(q\)](#)

Commencement Information

- I294** Sch. 21 para. 53 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 53 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 53 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I295** Sch. 21 para. 53 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

^{F24}54

Textual Amendments

- F24** Sch. 21 para. 54 repealed (8.11.2006) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006](#) (c. 40), s. 188(1), [Sch. 18 Pt. 1](#)

Commencement Information

- I296** Sch. 21 para. 54 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 54 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 54 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I297** Sch. 21 para. 54 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I298** Sch. 21 para. 54 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

55 In section 545 of the Education Act 1996 (exemption of educational buildings from building byelaws), in subsection (2)(a) the words “or section 218(7) of the Education Reform Act 1988” are omitted.

Commencement Information

- I299** [Sch. 21 para. 55](#) in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)
- I300** [Sch. 21 para. 55](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

56 In section 578 of the Education Act 1996 (meaning of “the Education Acts”), the reference to the School Teachers’ Pay and Conditions Act 1991 is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I301** Sch. 21 para. 56 in force at 1.8.2003 by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 2](#)

57 In section 579(1) of the Education Act 1996 (general interpretation)—
(a) after the definition of “local government elector” there is inserted—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- “maintained nursery school” has the meaning given by section 22(9) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998;”,
- (b) after the definition of “modifications” there is inserted—
- “the National Curriculum” (without more) means—
- (a) in relation to England, the National Curriculum for England, and
- (b) in relation to Wales, the National Curriculum for Wales;”,
- and
- (c) after the definition of “regulations” there is inserted—
- “sex education” includes education about—
- (a) Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome and Human Immunodeficiency Virus, and
- (b) any other sexually transmitted disease;”.

Commencement Information

- I302** Sch. 21 para. 57 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 57 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 57(b)(c) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 57 (except sub-para. (a)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I303** Sch. 21 para. 57(a) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I304** Sch. 21 para. 57(a) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 58 In Schedule 27 to the Education Act 1996—
- (a) in paragraph 3A(1), after the words “maintained school”, in each place where they occur, there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”, and
- (b) in paragraph 8(1)(a), after “maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”.

Commencement Information

- I305** Sch. 21 para. 58 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I306** Sch. 21 para. 58 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

School Inspections Act 1996 (c. 57)

F2559

Textual Amendments

- F25** Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034](#), [art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4](#) para. 6)

F2560

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2561

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2562

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2563

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2564

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2565

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2566

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), Sch. 1 (with Sch. 4 para. 6)

F2567

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

F25⁶⁸

Textual Amendments

F25 Sch. 21 paras. 59-68 repealed (1.9.2005 for E., 1.9.2006 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 1](#); [S.I. 2005/2034, art. 4](#); [S.I. 2006/1338, art. 3](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [Sch. 4 para. 6](#))

Education Act 1997 (c. 44)

69 [F26] In section 26 of the Education Act 1997 (supplementary provisions relating to discharge by Qualifications and Curriculum Authority of their functions), in subsection (1)(c)(i) for “section 351 of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “section 78 of the Education Act 2002 ”.]

Textual Amendments

F26 Sch. 21 para. 69 repealed (1.4.2010 for E., 1.11.2010 for W.) by [Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 \(c. 22\), s. 269\(4\), Sch. 16 Pt. 4](#); [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#); [S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2\(a\)](#)

Commencement Information

I307 Sch. 21 para. 69 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4, Sch.](#))

I308 Sch. 21 para. 69 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4\(1\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

70 In section 32 of the Education Act 1997 (supplementary provisions relating to discharge by Qualifications, Curriculum and Assessment Authority for Wales of their functions) in subsection (1)(c)(i) for “section 351 of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “section 99 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

I309 Sch. 21 para. 70 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 70 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 70 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)

I310 Sch. 21 para. 70 in force at 1.3.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 2](#)

71 Section 49 of the Education Act 1997 (regulations about access to children) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I311 Sch. 21 para. 71 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 71 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 71 in force for certain purposes for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

I312 Sch. 21 para. 71 in force at 31.3.2003 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)

I313 Sch. 21 para. 71 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I314 Sch. 21 para. 71 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

Police Act 1997 (c. 50)

^{F27}72

Textual Amendments

F27 Sch. 21 para. 72 repealed (6.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 7\(f\)](#)

^{F28}73

Textual Amendments

F28 Sch. 21 para. 73 repealed (6.4.2006) by [Serious Organised Crime and Police Act 2005 \(c. 15\), s. 178\(8\)](#), [Sch. 17 Pt. 2](#); [S.I. 2006/378, art. 7\(f\)](#)

Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30)

74 In section 1 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (establishment and functions of General Teaching Council), subsection (8) is omitted.

Commencement Information

I315 Sch. 21 para. 74 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 74 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 74 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

I316 Sch. 21 para. 74 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)

75 [^{F29}In section 2 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (advisory functions of General Teaching Council), in subsection (4), for “by virtue of section 218(6) of the Education Reform Act 1988 (prohibition or restriction on employment of teachers)” there is substituted “ under section 142 of the Education Act 2002 (prohibition from teaching, &c.) ”.]

Textual Amendments

F29 Sch. 21 para. 75 repealed (12.10.2009 for specified purposes) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\), s. 65](#), [Sch. 10](#) (with [ss. 51, 57\(3\), 60\(4\), 64\(5\)](#)); [S.I. 2009/2611, art. 4](#)

Commencement Information

I317 Sch. 21 para. 75 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 75 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 75 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I318 Sch. 21 para. 75 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I319 Sch. 21 para. 75 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3](#)

76 In section 3 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (registration of teachers), in subsection (3)—

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the words “within the meaning of section 218(2) of the Education Reform Act 1988” are omitted, and
- (b) [F30 for paragraph (a) there is substituted—
“(a) subject to a direction under section 142(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002 (prohibition from teaching, &c.),”.]

Textual Amendments

F30 Sch. 21 para. 76(b) repealed (12.10.2009 for specified purposes) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\)](#), s. 65, [Sch. 10](#) (with ss. 51, 57(3), 60(4), 64(5)); S.I. 2009/2611, art. 4

Commencement Information

- I320** Sch. 21 para. 76 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 76 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 76 (except sub-para. (b)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 4, [Sch. Pt. I](#); Sch. 21 para. 76 in force insofar as not already in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I321** Sch. 21 para. 76(a) in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), art. 3
- I322** Sch. 21 para. 76(b) in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I323** Sch. 21 para. 76(b) in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), art. 3

- 77 In section 4 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (regulations relating to registration with General Teaching Council), for subsection (3)(a) there is substituted—
“(a) a direction given under section 142 of the Education Act 2002 (prohibition from teaching, &c.),”.

Commencement Information

- I324** Sch. 21 para. 77 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 77 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 77 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I325** Sch. 21 para. 77 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 5, [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I326** Sch. 21 para. 77 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), art. 3

- 78 In section 7 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (additional functions of General Teaching Council), in subsection (3), for the words from “the exercise” to the end there is substituted “ the specification of requirements of regulations under section 132 of the Education Act 2002 (qualified teacher status) ”.

Commencement Information

- I327** Sch. 21 para. 78 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 78 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 78 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), art. 4, [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I328** Sch. 21 para. 78 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), art. 3

- 79 Section 10 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (further functions of General Teaching Council for Wales in relation to teachers) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

- I329** Sch. 21 para. 79 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), art. 2

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I330 Sch. 21 para. 79 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

80 Section 11 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (registration requirement for school teachers) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I331 Sch. 21 para. 80 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3

I332 Sch. 21 para. 80 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

81 In section 12 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (deduction from teachers' salaries of fees for registration with General Teaching Council)—

(a) for subsection (2)(b) there is substituted—

“(b) required to be registered in the register by virtue of section 134 of the Education Act 2002”,

and

(b) in subsection (4), for the definition of “schools” there is substituted—

““school” means a school maintained by a local education authority or a special school not so maintained”.

Commencement Information

I333 Sch. 21 para. 81 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 81 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 81 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. 1

I334 Sch. 21 para. 81 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3

82 Section 13 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (consultation about qualified teacher status) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I335 Sch. 21 para. 82 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3

I336 Sch. 21 para. 82 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), Sch. Pt. 1

83 For section 15 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (supply of information relating to dismissal or resignation of teachers, &c.) there is substituted—

“15 Supply of information following dismissal, resignation, &c.

(1) This section applies where a relevant employer—

- (a) has ceased to use a person's services on a ground mentioned in section 142 of the Education Act 2002, or
- (b) might have ceased to use a person's services on a ground mentioned in that section had the person not ceased to provide those services.

(2) In the case of a person who was providing services to a relevant employer in England, the employer shall provide prescribed information to such of the following as may be prescribed—

- (a) the Secretary of State, and

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) where the person is a registered teacher, the Council.
- (3) In the case of a person who was providing services to a relevant employer in Wales, the employer shall provide prescribed information to such of the following as may be prescribed—
 - (a) the National Assembly for Wales, and
 - (b) where the person is a registered teacher, the General Teaching Council for Wales.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, a reference to a ground mentioned in section 142 of the Education Act 2002 shall be read as if subsection (4)(e) was not limited to the case of a direction given by virtue of subsection (2)(d).
- (5) In this section—
 - “relevant employer” has the meaning given by section 142 of the Education Act 2002, and
 - “services” includes professional and voluntary services.

15A Supply of information by contractor, agency, &c.

- (1) This section applies to arrangements made by one person (the “agent”) for another person (the “worker”) to carry out work at the request of or with the consent of a relevant employer (whether or not under a contract).
- (2) Subsections (3) and (4) apply where an agent—
 - (a) has terminated the arrangements on a ground mentioned in section 142 of the Education Act 2002,
 - (b) might have terminated the arrangements on a ground mentioned in that section if the worker had not terminated them, or
 - (c) might have refrained from making new arrangements for a worker on a ground mentioned in that section if he had not ceased to make himself available for work.
- (3) In the case of arrangements for a worker to carry out work in England, the agent shall provide prescribed information to such of the following as may be prescribed—
 - (a) the Secretary of State, and
 - (b) where the person is a registered teacher, the Council.
- (4) In the case of arrangements for a worker to carry out work in Wales, the agent shall provide prescribed information to such of the following as may be prescribed—
 - (a) the National Assembly for Wales, and
 - (b) where the person is a registered teacher, the General Teaching Council for Wales.
- (5) If the Secretary of State thinks that an agent has failed or is likely to fail to comply with a duty arising under subsection (3), the Secretary of State may direct the person to comply with the duty.
- (6) If the National Assembly thinks that an agent has failed or is likely to fail to comply with a duty arising under subsection (4), the National Assembly may direct the person to comply with the duty.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) A direction under subsection (5) shall be enforceable, on the application of the Secretary of State, by mandatory order.
- (8) A direction under subsection (6) shall be enforceable, on the application of the National Assembly, by a mandatory order.
- (9) Subsections (4) and (5) of section 15 shall apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of that section.”

Commencement Information

I337 Sch. 21 para. 83 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 83 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 83 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I338

I339 Sch. 21 para. 83 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

- 84 Section 18 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (qualifications of head teachers) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I340 Sch. 21 para. 84 in force at 1.10.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 5](#)

I341 [Sch. 21 para. 84](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 85 In section 19 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (requirement for school teacher to serve induction period)—
- (a) in subsection (7), for “section 49 of the Education (No. 2) Act 1986” there is substituted “section 131 of the Education Act 2002”,
- (b) in subsection (8), after “local education authorities” there is inserted “in Wales”, and
- (c) for subsection (10)(b) there is substituted—
- “(b) “relevant school” means a school maintained by a local education authority or a special school not so maintained.”.

Commencement Information

I342 Sch. 21 para. 85 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 85 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 85(a) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 85 (except for sub-para. (b)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#); Sch. 21 para. 85 in force insofar as not already in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I343 Sch. 21 para. 85(b) in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

I344 Sch. 21 para. 85(b) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

I345 Sch. 21 para. 85(c) in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)

- 86 (1) Schedule 2 to the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (disciplinary powers of the General Teaching Council) is amended as follows.
- (2) ^{F31}In paragraph 1(4) for the words from “of any powers” to the end there is substituted

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) on the grounds that a person is unsuitable to work with children, or
- (b) on grounds relating to a person’s misconduct or health.”]

(3) Paragraph 1(5) is omitted.

Textual Amendments

F31 Sch. 21 para. 86(2) repealed (12.10.2009 for specified purposes) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\), s. 65, Sch. 10](#) (with ss. 51, 57(3), 60(4), 64(5)); S.I. 2009/2611, art. 4

Commencement Information

- I346** Sch. 21 para. 86 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 86 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 86 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I347** Sch. 21 para. 86 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I348** Sch. 21 para. 86 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3](#)

School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31)

87 In section 1 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (duty to set limit on infant class sizes), for “qualified teacher” there is substituted “school teacher”.

Commencement Information

- I349** Sch. 21 para. 87 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 87 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 87 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I350** Sch. 21 para. 87 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)

88 In section 4 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (interpretation) for the definition of “qualified teacher” there is substituted—

““school teacher” means a person who is a school teacher for the purposes of section 122 of the Education Act 2002 (determination of school teachers’ pay and conditions)”.

Commencement Information

- I351** Sch. 21 para. 88 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 88 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 88 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I352** Sch. 21 para. 88 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#)

89 In section 7 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (approval, modification and review of statement of proposals) subsection (10) is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I353** Sch. 21 para. 89 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

90 In section 12 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (functions of Education Action Forum), in subsection (4) for the words from “under sections” to “Schedule 17,” there is substituted “under sections 35 to 37 of, or Schedule 2 to, the Education Act 2002 or under regulations made under those sections, ”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Commencement Information

I354 Sch. 21 para. 90 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I355 [Sch. 21 para. 90](#) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 91 Section 13 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (disapplication of school teachers' pay and conditions order) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

I356 Sch. 21 para. 91 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 91 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 91 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))

- 92 In section 14 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (powers of intervention exercisable by LEAs), after subsection (1) there is inserted—
“(1A) In this Chapter “maintained school” includes a maintained nursery school.”

Commencement Information

I357 Sch. 21 para. 92 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I358 Sch. 21 para. 92 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 93 (1) Section 16 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (power of local education authority to appoint additional governors) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (5) for “(despite anything in Part II of Schedule 9)” there is substituted “(despite anything in regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002)”.
(3) In subsection (10) for “(despite paragraph 14 of Schedule 9)” there is substituted “(despite anything in regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002)”.

Commencement Information

I359 Sch. 21 para. 93 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I360 Sch. 21 para. 93 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 94 (1) Section 18 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (power of Secretary of State to appoint additional governors) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (5) for “(despite anything in Part II of Schedule 9)” there is substituted “(despite anything in regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002).”
(3) In subsection (6)(b) for “paragraph 14 of Schedule 9” there is substituted “regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002.”

Commencement Information

I361 Sch. 21 para. 94 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)

I362 Sch. 21 para. 94 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 95 In section 20 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (new categories of maintained schools), in subsection (2)(b), for “section 28 or 31” there is substituted “ any enactment ”.

Commencement Information

- I363** Sch. 21 para. 95 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 95 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 95 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I364** Sch. 21 para. 95 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

- 96 (1) Section 22 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (maintenance of schools) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) in paragraph (b), the words “under section 28 or 31” are omitted, and
 - (b) in paragraph (c), the words “under section 28” are omitted.
- (3) In subsection (4)(b), for the words from “under paragraph 2” to the end there is substituted “ under any enactment of providing new premises for the school ”.
- (4) In subsection (5)(b), for the words from “under paragraph 4” to the end there is substituted “ under any enactment of providing new premises for the school ”.

Commencement Information

- I365** Sch. 21 para. 96 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 96 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 96 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I366** Sch. 21 para. 96 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

F3297

Textual Amendments

- F32** Sch. 21 para. 97 repealed (1.9.2005) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\), s. 125\(4\), Sch. 19 Pt. 2; S.I. 2006/2129, art. 4](#)

- 98 (1) Section 33 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (provisions relating to establishment etc of schools) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for the words from “paragraph 5” to “2000” there is substituted “ any enactment ”,
 - (b) in paragraph (c), after “shall be” there is inserted “ established or ”, and
 - (c) after that paragraph there is inserted “; and
 - (d) no prescribed alteration shall be made to any maintained nursery school which is maintained by a local education authority in Wales.”
- (3) After subsection (4) there is inserted—
- “(5) For the purposes of this Part proposals for the establishment of a maintained school shall be taken to be implemented on the school opening date.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) In this Part “school opening date”, in relation to a new maintained school, means the date when the school first admits pupils.”

Commencement Information

- I367** Sch. 21 para. 98 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 98(1)(2) (except sub-para. (b) (c)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I368** Sch. 21 para. 98(1)(2)(a)(3) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
- I369** Sch. 21 para. 98(2)(b) in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)
- I370** Sch. 21 para. 98(2)(b)(c) in force at 31.3.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
- I371** Sch. 21 para. 98(3) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 99 (1) Section 45 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (budget shares of maintained schools) is amended as follows.

- (2) After subsection (1) there is inserted—

“(1A) In this Chapter “maintained school” means—

- (a) a community, foundation or voluntary school,
- (b) a community or foundation special school, or
- (c) a maintained nursery school.”

- (3) In subsection (3)—

- (a) in paragraph (a), for the words from “schools which” to “section 20(7)” there is substituted “pupil referral units”, and
- (b) in paragraph (b)(i), for the words “section 28 or 31 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7” there is substituted “any enactment”.

Commencement Information

- I372** Sch. 21 para. 99 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 99 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 99(1)(3) (except sub-para. (b)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I373** Sch. 21 para. 99(1)(3)(b) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
- I374** Sch. 21 para. 99(2) (3)(a) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#) (with [Sch. para. 5](#))
- I375** Sch. 21 para. 99(2)(3)(a) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 100 (1) Section 49 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (maintained schools to have delegated budgets) is amended as follows.

- (2) In subsection (4) for “local schools budget” there is substituted “LEA budget or schools budget”.

- (3) In subsection (6)(b), for “or paragraph 14(2) of Schedule 6” there is substituted “, paragraph 14(2) of Schedule 6, paragraph 3(3) of Schedule 7A to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 or paragraph 8 of Schedule 8 to the Education Act 2002”.

Commencement Information

- I376** Sch. 21 para. 100 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 100(1)(2) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
- I377** Sch. 21 para. 100(1)(2) in force at 4.12.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- I378** Sch. 21 para. 100(3) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
I379 Sch. 21 para. 100(3) in force at 1.8.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 101 In section 50 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (effect of financial delegation), in subsection (5) for the words from “under paragraph 6” onwards there is substituted “ under section 19 of the Education Act 2002 (or, in the case of temporary governors of a new school, regulations under section 34(5) of that Act).”

Commencement Information

- I380** Sch. 21 para. 101 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
I381 Sch. 21 para. 101 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 102 In section 61 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (responsibility of governing body and head teacher for discipline) after subsection (7) there is inserted—

“(8) In this section “maintained school” includes a maintained nursery school.”

Commencement Information

- I382** Sch. 21 para. 102 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
I383 Sch. 21 para. 102 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 103 In section 62 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (reserve power of local education authority to prevent a breakdown of discipline) after subsection (4) there is inserted—

“(5) In this section “maintained school” includes a maintained nursery school.”

Commencement Information

- I384** Sch. 21 para. 103 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
I385 Sch. 21 para. 103 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 104 (1) Section 69 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (duty to secure provision of religious education) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for “section 352(1)(a) of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “ section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002 ”.

(3) In subsection (2), for “section 352(1)(a)” there is substituted “ section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) ”.

Commencement Information

- I386** Sch. 21 para. 104 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 104 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 104 in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 104 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)
I387 Sch. 21 para. 104 in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 105 In section 71 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (exceptions and special arrangements etc.) in subsection (2)(a) for “section 352(1)(a) of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “ section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I388** Sch. 21 para. 105 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 105 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 105 in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 105 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I389** Sch. 21 para. 105 in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

- 106 In section 72 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (further provisions relating to new schools), in subsection (3)(a) for “section 44” there is substituted “ section 34 of the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I390** Sch. 21 para. 106 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
- I391** Sch. 21 para. 106 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 107 In section 81 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (application of employment law during financial delegation), in subsection (1) for the words from “sections” to the end there is substituted “ sections 35 to 37 of the Education Act 2002 or of regulations under those sections ”.

Commencement Information

- I392** Sch. 21 para. 107 in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)
- I393** Sch. 21 para. 107 in force at 1.4.2006 for W. by [S.I. 2006/879](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

- 108 In section 82 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (modification of trust deeds), in subsection (1), after “provision of this Act” there is inserted “ , the Learning and Skills Act 2000 or the Education Act 2002 ”.

Commencement Information

- I394** Sch. 21 para. 108 wholly in force at 19.12.2002; Sch. 21 para. 108 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 108 in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)) and in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

- 109 In section 101 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (permitted selection), in subsection (4), for the words from “under” to the end there is substituted “ , and fallen to be implemented, under any enactment ”.

Commencement Information

- I395** Sch. 21 para. 109 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 109 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 109 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I396 Sch. 21 para. 109 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

110 (1) Section 127 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (code of practice for securing effective relationships between local education authorities and maintained schools) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), after “maintained school” there is inserted “ or maintained nursery school ”.

^{F33}(3)

Textual Amendments

F33 Sch. 21 para. 110(3) repealed (8.1.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\), s. 188\(2\), Sch. 18 Pt. 2](#)

Commencement Information

I397 Sch. 21 para. 110(1)(3)(a) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

I398 Sch. 21 para. 110(1) in force at 1.9.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/1728, art. 5, Sch. Pt. 2](#)

I399 Sch. 21 para. 110(2) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I400 Sch. 21 para. 110(2) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

111 In section 138 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (orders and regulations) in subsection (4)(a), after “20(7)” there is inserted “ 45C(2), ”.

Commencement Information

I401 Sch. 21 para. 111 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4, Sch.](#))

I402 Sch. 21 para. 111 in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4\(1\), Sch. Pt. 1](#)

112 In section 142 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (general interpretation) in subsection (1) after the definition of “employment” there is inserted—

““exclude”, in relation to the exclusion of a child from a school, means exclude on disciplinary grounds (and “exclusion” shall be construed accordingly);

“foundation governor”, in relation to a foundation school, a foundation special school or a voluntary school, means a person appointed as a foundation governor in accordance with regulations under section 19 of the Education Act 2002;”.

Commencement Information

I403 Sch. 21 para. 112 in force at 1.4.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)

I404 Sch. 21 para. 112 in force at 1.9.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 4](#)

I405 Sch. 21 para. 112 in force at 9.1.2004 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961, art. 7, Sch. Pt. IV](#)

I406 Sch. 21 para. 112 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, Sch.](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- 113 In section 143 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (index)—
- (a) in the entry beginning “exclude, exclusion (in relation to the exclusion of a child from a school)” for “section 64(4)” there is substituted “section 142(1)”,
 - (b) in the entry beginning “foundation governor”, for “paragraph 2 of Schedule 9” there is substituted “section 142(1)”,
 - (c) in the entry beginning “individual schools budget”, for “section 46(2)” there is substituted “section 45A(3)”,
 - (d) after the entry beginning “land” there is inserted—

“LEA budget (in Part 2)	section 45A(1)”,
-------------------------	------------------
 - (e) in the entry beginning “qualified teacher” for “qualified teacher” there is substituted “school teacher”,
 - (f) in the entry beginning “school opening date” for “section 44(9)” there is substituted “section 33(6)”, and
 - (g) after the entry beginning “school which has selective admission arrangements” there is inserted—

“schools budget (in Part 2)	section 45A(2)”.
-----------------------------	------------------

Commencement Information

- I407** Sch. 21 para. 113 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 113 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 113 (c)(d)(g) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 113 (except sub-paras. (a)-(d)(f)(g)) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I408** Sch. 21 para. 113(a) in force at 9.1.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 7](#), [Sch. Pt. IV](#)
- I409** Sch. 21 para. 113(b) in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I410** Sch. 21 para. 113(b)(f) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)
- I411** Sch. 21 para. 113(c)(d)(g) in force at 4.12.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2003/2961](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I412** Sch. 21 para. 113(e) in force at 1.8.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 3](#)

- 114 In Schedule 3 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (funding of foundation, voluntary and foundation special schools), in paragraph 4(2)(a), for the words from “Part III” to “proposals” there is substituted “any enactment”.

Commencement Information

- I413** Sch. 21 para. 114 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 114 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 114 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I414** Sch. 21 para. 114 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

- 115 (1) Schedule 6 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (establishment etc of schools) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 3, after sub-paragraph (2) there is inserted—
- “(2A) The requirement to make a decision under sub-paragraph (2) in the case of proposals of a prescribed description only applies if, at the time when the decision falls to be made under that sub-paragraph, the committee are satisfied that the proposals do not relate to any relevant proposals.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2B) In sub-paragraph (2A), “relevant proposals” means proposals of a description prescribed for the purposes of this sub-paragraph.

(2C) In deciding for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2A) whether any proposals are related the relevant committee shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.”

(3) In paragraph 4(3)—

(a) in paragraph (b), after “body of a” there is inserted “ community, ”, and

(b) after paragraph (e) there is inserted—

“(f) any undetermined proposals published under section 113A of the Learning and Skills Act 2000, if those proposals are relevant proposals for the purposes of paragraph 3(2A);

(g) any undetermined proposals made under section 51 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992, if those proposals are relevant proposals for those purposes; or

(h) any direction under section 71 of the Education Act 2002”.

(4) In paragraph 4(4)—

(a) in paragraph (a), after “or under Schedule 7” there is inserted “ or 7A ”, and

(b) after paragraph (b) there is inserted “or

(c) the Secretary of State has not made a decision as to whether or not to make an order under section 16 or 27 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992,”.

(5) In paragraph 12 (implementation of proposals relating to community or maintained nursery schools)—

(a) in sub-paragraph (1), for the words from “proposed” to the end there is substituted “ maintained nursery school or a proposed such school ”, and

(b) in sub-paragraph (2) there is inserted at the end “ or, in the case of proposals published by the governing body of a community school under section 28(2) (b), by the local education authority who maintain the school ”.

Commencement Information

I415 Sch. 21 para. 115(1)(2)(3)(b)(4) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)

I416 Sch. 21 para. 115(3)(a) in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

I417 Sch. 21 para. 115(5)(a) in force at 31.3.2004 for W. by [S.I. 2004/912](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

I418 Sch. 21 para. 115(5)(b) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

116 In Schedule 7 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (rationalisation of school places), in paragraph 8(7)(c) (approval of proposals), after “body of any” there is inserted “ community ”.

Commencement Information

I419 Sch. 21 para. 116 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

117 (1) Schedule 19 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (required provision for religious education) is amended as follows.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) In paragraph 1—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for “section 352(1)(a) of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002”, and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (2), for “that Act” there is substituted “the Education Act 1996”.
- (3) In sub-paragraph 4(4), for “section 352(1)(a) of the Education Act 1996” there is substituted “section 80(1)(a) or 101(1)(a) of the Education Act 2002”.

Commencement Information

- I420** Sch. 21 para. 117 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 117 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 117 in force for certain purposes for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 117 in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I421** Sch. 21 para. 117 in force at 1.3.2003 so far as not already in force except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 2](#)

- 118 (1) Schedule 22 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (disposal of land) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 1(1)(a) (disposals of land by governing body of foundation, voluntary or foundation special school), after “Schedule 6” there is inserted “(including that provision as applied by any enactment)”.
- (3) In paragraph 2(1)(a) (disposals of land by foundation body)—
- (a) after “Schedule 6” there is inserted “(including that provision as applied by any enactment)”, and
 - ^{F34}(b)
- (4) In paragraph 3 (disposal of land by trustees)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1)(a)—
 - (i) after “Schedule 6” there is inserted “(including that provision as applied by any enactment)”, and
 - ^{F35}(ii)
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (8)(b)(ii), for “section 28 or 31” there is substituted “any enactment”.
- (5) In paragraph 5 (discontinuance of schools)—
- (a) for sub-paragraph (1)(a) there is substituted—

“(a) proposals to discontinue a foundation, voluntary or foundation special school have been approved, adopted or determined to be implemented under any enactment, or”,

and
 - (b) in sub-paragraph (4)(c) for “section 28 or 31 or paragraph 5 of Schedule 7” there is substituted “any enactment”.
- (6) In paragraph 7 (disposal of property held by governing body of maintained school on their dissolution), in sub-paragraph (1) for “paragraph 4 of Schedule 10” there is substituted “paragraph 5 of Schedule 1 to the Education Act 2002”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F34** Sch. 21 para. 118(3)(b) repealed (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 18 Pt. 6](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 7(q)
- F35** Sch. 21 para. 118(4)(a)(ii) repealed (25.5.2007) by [Education and Inspections Act 2006 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 188(3), [Sch. 18 Pt. 6](#); [S.I. 2007/935](#), art. 7(q)

Commencement Information

- I422** Sch. 21 para. 118 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 118 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 118(6) in force for E. at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439](#), [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)); Sch. 21 para. 118(1)(2)(3) (except sub-para. (b)) (4) (except sub-para. (a)(ii)) (5) in force for W. at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I423** Sch. 21 para. 118(1)-(5) in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
- I424** Sch. 21 para. 118(6) in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

119 In Schedule 32 to the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (transitional provisions), paragraph 7 is omitted.

Commencement Information

- I425** Sch. 21 para. 119 in force at 1.8.2003 by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 2](#)

Protection of Children Act 1999 (c. 14)

120 Section 5 of the Protection of Children Act 1999 (prohibiting or restricting employment of teachers, &c.) shall cease to have effect.

Commencement Information

- I426** Sch. 21 para. 120 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 120 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 120 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I427** Sch. 21 para. 120 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I428** Sch. 21 para. 120 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115](#), [art. 3](#)

^{F36}121

Textual Amendments

- F36** Sch. 21 para. 121 repealed (12.10.2009) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\)](#), s. 65, [Sch. 10](#) (with [ss. 51](#), [57\(3\)](#), [60\(4\)](#), [64\(5\)](#)); [S.I. 2009/2611](#), [art. 2](#) (with [arts. 5-7](#)) (as amended (30.3.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1101](#), [arts. 6-11](#))

122 In section 9(2) of the Protection of Children Act 1999 (proceedings of the Tribunal)

^{F37}(a)

(b) at the end there is inserted “or

(“ on an appeal under section 166 of the Education Act 2002;”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

F37 Sch. 21 para. 122(a) repealed (12.10.2009) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\)](#), s. 65, [Sch. 10](#) (with ss. 51, 57(3), 60(4), 64(5)); S.I. 2009/2611, art. 2 (with arts. 5-7) (as amended (30.3.2010) by S.I. 2010/1101, arts. 6-11)

Commencement Information

I429 Sch. 21 para. 122 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1115, [art. 3](#)
I430 Sch. 21 para. 122(b) in force at 1.1.2004 for W. by S.I. 2003/2961, [art. 6](#), [Sch. Pt. III](#)

^{F38}123

Textual Amendments

F38 Sch. 21 para. 123 repealed (12.10.2009) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\)](#), s. 65, [Sch. 10](#) (with ss. 51, 57(3), 60(4), 64(5)); S.I. 2009/2611, art. 2 (with arts. 5-7) (as amended (30.3.2010) by S.I. 2010/1101, arts. 6-11)

Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21)

- 124 (1) Section 7 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (funding of school sixth-forms by Learning and Skills Council for England) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) for “local schools budget” there is substituted “schools budget”.
- ^{F39}(3)

Textual Amendments

F39 Sch. 21 para. 124(3) repealed (1.11.2005 for E., 1.4.2010 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 4](#); S.I. 2005/2034, art. 8; S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(f)

Commencement Information

I431 Sch. 21 para. 124 in force at 1.10.2002 for E. by S.I. 2002/2439, [art. 3](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#))
I432 Sch. 21 para. 124(1)(2) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. 1](#)

- 125 (1) Section 36 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (funding of school sixth-forms by National Council for Education and Training for Wales) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a) for “local schools budget” there is substituted “schools budget”.
- ^{F40}(3)

Textual Amendments

F40 Sch. 21 para. 125(3) repealed (1.4.2010 for W.) by [Education Act 2005 \(c. 18\)](#), s. 125(4), [Sch. 19 Pt. 4](#); S.I. 2010/735, art. 2(f)

Commencement Information

I433 Sch. 21 para. 125 in force at 4.12.2003 for W. by S.I. 2003/2961, [art. 5](#), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

I434 Sch. 21 para. 125 in force at 6.11.2006 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2006/2895](#), [art. 2](#)

- 126 (1) Schedule 7 to the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (inadequate sixth forms) is amended as follows.
- (2) In each of paragraphs 17, 21, 25 and 29 (procedure on proposals for closure of sixth form), in sub-paragraph (2), for “copy and information mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b)” there is substituted “copy mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a)”.
- (3) In paragraphs 32 and 39 (implementation of proposals relating to schools in England or Wales), in sub-paragraph (1), after “schools” there is inserted “maintained by a local education authority”.

Commencement Information

- I435** Sch. 21 para. 126(1) in force at 19.12.2002 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
Sch. 21 para. 126(2)(3) in force at 19.12.2002 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I436** Sch. 21 para. 126 in force at 1.4.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124](#), [art. 4](#)
- I437** Sch. 21 para. 126(3) in force at 2.1.2008 for W. so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2007/3611](#), [art. 4\(1\)](#), [Sch. Pt. I](#)

Freedom of Information Act 2000 (c. 36)

- 127 In Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (public authorities), for paragraph 52 there is substituted—
- “52 The governing body of—
- (a) a maintained school, as defined by section 20(7) of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998, or
- (b) a maintained nursery school, as defined by section 22(9) of that Act.”

Commencement Information

- I438** Sch. 21 para. 127 in force at 1.9.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667](#), [art. 4](#)
- I439** Sch. 21 para. 127 in force at 31.10.2005 for W. by [S.I. 2005/2910](#), [art. 4](#), [Sch.](#)

Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43)

- 128^{F41}(1) Section 35 of the Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (persons disqualified from working with children: offences) is amended as follows.
- (2) For subsection (4)(b) there is substituted—
- “(b) he is subject to a direction under section 142 of the Education Act 2002 (prohibition from teaching, &c.), given on the grounds that he is unsuitable to work with children.”
- (3) Subsection (5) is omitted.]

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Textual Amendments

- F41** Sch. 21 para. 128 repealed (12.10.2009 for specified purposes) by [Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 \(c. 47\)](#), s. 65, [Sch. 10](#) (with ss. 51, 57(3), 60(4), 64(5)); S.I. 2009/2611, art. 4

Commencement Information

- I440** Sch. 21 para. 128 partly in force; Sch. 21 para. 128 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 21 para. 128 in force for W. at 31.3.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I441** Sch. 21 para. 128 in force at 31.3.2003 for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I442** Sch. 21 para. 128 in force at 1.6.2003 except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3](#)

SCHEDULE 22

Section 215(2)

REPEALS

Commencement Information

- I443** Sch. 22 in force at 20.1.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#) (with [Sch. para. 34](#))
- I444** Sch. 22 in force at 1.4.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 4](#)
- I445** Sch. 22 in force at 6.4.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/124, art. 5](#)
- I446** Sch. 22 in force at 1.6.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1115, art. 3](#)

PART 1

REPEALS COMING INTO FORCE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 216(2)

Commencement Information

- I447** Sch. 22 Pt. 1 in force at 1.8.2003 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 2](#)
- I448** Sch. 22 Pt. 1 partly in force; Sch. 22 Pt. 1 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; specified entries in Sch. 22 Pt. 1 in force at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 2](#) (with transitional provisions and savings in [Sch.](#))

<i>Short title and chapter</i>	<i>Extent of repeal</i>
School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991 (c. 49).	The whole Act.
Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13).	Section 26(9). Section 48.
Education Act 1996 (c. 56).	In section 578, the reference to the School Teachers' Pay and Conditions Act 1991. In Schedule 37, paragraph 101.
Education Act 1997 (c. 44).	In section 23, in subsection (2), paragraph (f) and the word "and" immediately preceding it, and subsections (3) and (4).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

	In section 26(3), the words “or approve” and the words “and subject to such conditions”.
School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31).	Section 13. In Schedule 30, paragraphs 24 to 28, 44 and 214(a). In Schedule 32, paragraph 7.

PART 2

REPEALS COMING INTO FORCE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 216(3)

Commencement Information

- I449** Sch. 22 Pt. 2 in force at 1.9.2003 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III](#)
- I450** Sch. 22 Pt. 2 partly in force; Sch. 22 Pt. 2 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; specified entries in Sch. 22 Pt. 2 in force at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#); further specified entries in Sch. 22 Pt. 2 in force at 1.9.2003 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 6, Sch. Pt. III](#)

Short title and chapter

Extent of repeal

Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50).	Section 28J(4).
Education Act 1997.	In section 29, in subsection (2), paragraph (f) and the word “and” immediately preceding it, and subsections (3) and (4). In section 32(3), the words “or approve” and the words “and subject to such conditions”.
School Standards and Framework Act 1998.	In Schedule 30, paragraph 215.
Special Educational Needs and Disability Act 2001 (c. 10).	Section 42(2). In Schedule 8, paragraph 2.

PART 3

REPEALS COMING INTO FORCE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 216(4)

Commencement Information

- I451** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 partly in force; Sch. 22 Pt. 3 not in force at Royal Assent, see s. 216; Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force for E. for specified purposes at 26.7.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 3](#); Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force for E. for specified purposes at 2.9.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2002, art. 4](#); Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force for E. for specified purposes at 1.10.2002 by [S.I. 2002/2439, art. 3](#) (with [Sch.](#)); Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force for E. for specified purposes at 20.1.2003 by [S.I. 2002/2952, art. 2](#) (with [art. 3, Sch. paras. 2-4](#)); Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force for W. for specified purposes at 19.12.2002 by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#) (with [art. 7](#))
- I452** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 31.3.2003 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2002/3185, art. 5, Sch. Pt. II](#)
- I453** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2003/1718, art. 4, Sch. Pt. I](#)
- I454** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.8.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by [S.I. 2003/1667, art. 3](#) (with [Sch. paras. 2, 3](#)) (which transitional provisions in Sch. para. 2 are omitted (10.9.2005) by virtue of [S.I. 2005/2570, art. 2\(b\)](#))

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- I455** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.9.2003 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2003/1718, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- I456** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.9.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667, **art. 4**
- I457** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.10.2003 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by S.I. 2003/1667, **art. 5**
- I458** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 4.12.2003 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2003/2961, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. II**
- I459** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.1.2004 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2003/2961, art. 6, **Sch. Pt. III**
- I460** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 9.1.2004 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2003/2961, art. 7, **Sch. Pt. IV**
- I461** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 31.3.2004 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2004/912, art. 4, **Sch. Pt. 1**
- I462** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.8.2004 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2004/912, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. 2**
- I463** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.9.2004 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2004/1728, art. 5, **Sch. Pt. 2**
- I464** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 31.5.2005 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2005/1395, art. 4, **Sch.** (with art. 5(3)(4))
- I465** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 31.10.2005 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2005/2910, art. 4, **Sch.**
- I466** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.2.2006 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2006/172, art. 4, **Sch.**
- I467** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.4.2006 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2006/879, art. 4, **Sch.**
- I468** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 6.11.2006 for specified purposes except in relation to W. by S.I. 2006/2895, **art. 2** (with art. 3)
- I469** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 2.1.2008 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(1), **Sch. Pt. 1** (with **Sch. Pt paras. 2, 3**)
- I470** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 31.3.2008 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2007/3611, art. 4(2), **Sch. Pt. 2**
- I471** Sch. 22 Pt. 3 in force at 1.8.2008 for the repeal of Education Act 1996, section 410 for specified purposes for W. by S.I. 2008/1728, art. 3, **Sch. Pt. 2**

Short title and chapter	Extent of repeal
Education Act 1967 (c. 3).	The whole Act, so far as unrepealed.
Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7).	Section 25(5)(b).
Sex Discrimination Act 1975 (c. 65).	In Schedule 2, paragraph 4.
Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1982 (c. 30).	Section 40.
Education (Fees and Awards) Act 1983 (c. 40).	Section 1(6).
Education Act 1986 (c. 40).	Section 1(1)(b) and the word “and” immediately preceding it. Sections 2 to 4.
Education (No. 2) Act 1986 (c. 61).	Section 49. In section 50— (a) in subsection (1), paragraph (b) and the word “and” immediately preceding it, and (b) in subsection (3A), the words from “by the Secretary of State” to “teachers”.
Education Reform Act 1988 (c. 40).	Section 160. Sections 210 and 211. Sections 218 and 218A.
Children Act 1989 (c. 41).	In section 19, subsections (1) and (2) and in subsection (4) the words “the two authorities or, in Scotland,”. In section 79M(1), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (a).

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

	Section 79P(4)(d) and the preceding “and”. In section 79U, subsection (5) and, in subsection (9), the definition of “authorised inspector”.
Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c. 43).	Section 98(2)(c)(ii).
Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13).	In section 23(4), paragraph (b) and the word “and” immediately preceding it. In section 37, subsection (1)(b) and the word “or” immediately preceding it and subsections (8)(a) and (9). Sections 39 to 42. Section 60. In Schedule 8, paragraphs 46, 47, 49, 83 and 90.
Judicial Pensions and Retirement Act 1993 (c. 8).	In Schedule 5, the reference to “Chairman of an Independent Schools Tribunal”. In Schedule 7, paragraph 5(5)(xxvii).
Education Act 1994 (c. 30).	Section 4(4). In section 14, subsections (1), (3) and (4). In Schedule 2, paragraph 8(4).
Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (c. 50).	Section 28Q(12). In Schedule 4A, in the Table in paragraph 1, paragraph 3.
Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996 (c. 50).	The whole Act so far as unrepealed.
Education Act 1996 (c. 56).	In section 2(3)(a) the words “(including vocational, social, physical and recreational training)”. In section 4(1) the words “part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils or”. In section 5(1) the words “part-time education suitable to the requirements of junior pupils or”. Section 29(6). In section 316A(11)(b) the words “a maintained nursery school or”. In section 317 subsection (3)(b) and the word “and” preceding it. In section 318, in subsection (3A) paragraph (b) and the word “or” immediately preceding it. In section 329A(13)(a), the words “a maintained nursery school or”. Sections 350 to 369. Section 408(4)(a). In section 409(1), the words “with the approval of the Secretary of State and”. Section 410.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Sections 464 to 478.
 - Section 483(3A).
 - Section 483A(7).
 - In section 484, in subsection (2) the words “England and” and subsection (6).
 - Sections 486 to 488.
 - Sections 490 to 492
 - Section 497A(3).
 - Section 509(6).
 - In section 509A(5)(b), sub-paragraph (ii) and the word “or” immediately preceding it.
 - Section 537(9) and (10).
 - In section 545(2)(a), the words “or section 218(7) of the Education Reform Act 1988”.
 - In section 548(8), in paragraph (b), sub-paragraph (ii) and the word “or” preceding that sub-paragraph, and paragraph (c).
 - In section 568, in subsection (2) the words “sections 468, 471(1) and 474”, in subsection (3) the words from “section 354(6)” to “401”, and subsection (4).
 - In section 578, the entries relating to the Education Act 1967 and the Nursery Education and Grant-Maintained Schools Act 1996.
 - In section 580, the entries relating to—
 - city academy;
 - city college for the technology of the arts;
 - city technology college;
 - register, registration;
 - registered school;
 - Registrar of Independent Schools.
 - In Schedule 1, paragraph 7.
 - Schedule 34.
 - In Schedule 37, paragraphs 13 and 55, in paragraph 65(2), paragraph (b) and the word “and” immediately preceding it, paragraph 76 and paragraph 131.
- School Inspections Act 1996 (c. 57).
- In section 3(3), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (a).
 - In section 6(3), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (a).
 - In section 10, subsection (3)(e) and, in subsection (4B), paragraph (f) and the preceding “or”.
 - In section 11(5), in paragraph (a), “(e)” and paragraph (b).
 - In section 15(4)(c) the words “except where the school is a maintained nursery school”.

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

	<p>In section 16(3), the word “and” preceding paragraph (d).</p> <p>In section 20(3), paragraph (b) and the preceding “or”.</p> <p>In section 21—</p> <p>in subsection (3)(b) the words “except in the case of a maintained nursery school”, and in subsection (4), paragraph (b) and the preceding “or”.</p> <p>In Schedule 3, in the definition of “appropriate authority” in paragraph 1, paragraph (b), and in paragraph (c), “(e)”.</p>
Education Act 1997 (c. 44).	<p>Chapter 1 of Part 4.</p> <p>Section 49.</p> <p>In Schedule 7, paragraphs 8, 9(3), 14, 27, 28 and 36.</p>
Police Act 1997 (c. 50).	<p>In section 113—</p> <p>(a) in subsection (3A), paragraph (a)(ii) and (iii), and</p> <p>(b) in subsection (3B), paragraph (c) and the words from “and the reference” to the end.</p> <p>Section 115(6A)(a)(ii) and (iii).</p>
Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30).	<p>Section 1(8).</p> <p>In section 3—</p> <p>(a) the words “within the meaning of section 218(2) of the Education Reform Act 1988”, and</p> <p>(b) subsection (3)(c).</p> <p>Section 10.</p> <p>Section 11.</p> <p>Section 13.</p> <p>Section 18.</p> <p>In Schedule 2, paragraph 1(5).</p> <p>In Schedule 3, paragraph 5.</p>
School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31).	<p>Section 3.</p> <p>Section 7(10).</p> <p>Section 10(3) and (7).</p> <p>In section 11, in subsection (2) the words from “and” to the end, and subsection (3).</p> <p>Section 16(4) and (13).</p> <p>In section 22(1), in paragraph (b) the words “under section 28 or 31” and in paragraph (c) the words “under section 28”.</p> <p>In section 33(1), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (b).</p> <p>Sections 36 to 44.</p> <p>Section 46.</p> <p>In section 52(2), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (b).</p> <p>Sections 54 to 57.</p>

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

In section 63, in subsections (1) and (3) the word “unauthorised” and, in subsection (4), the definition of “unauthorised absence”.

Sections 64 to 68.

In section 84(6), the definition of “the relevant standard number”.

Section 86(3)(b) and (6).

Section 91.

Section 93.

Section 115.

In section 119(5), the word “and” at the end of paragraph (a).

In section 120(2)(a), the words “of proposals” and “and”.

In section 121, in subsection (1), the words “the authority’s statement of proposals” and in subsection (9) the words “early years development”.

Section 127(6)(e), (f), (h), (i) and (k).

In section 138—

(a) in subsection (2)(b), the words “paragraph 3(5) or 4 of Schedule 10”,

(b) in subsection (4)(b), the words “paragraph 4 or 8 of Schedule 23 or”, and

(c) in subsection (5), paragraph (a) (ii) and (iii) and, in paragraph (b)(ii), the word “46”.

In section 143, the entries relating to local schools budget and relevant standard number.

In Schedule 4, paragraph 5(4)(e).

In Schedule 6—

in paragraph 3(2), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (b);

in paragraph 4(3), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (d);

in paragraph 4(5), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (a);

in paragraph 5(9), the words “or (8)”;

in paragraph 10(6), the words “or (5)”.

Schedules 9 to 13.

Schedules 16 to 18.

Schedules 23 to 25.

In Schedule 26, in paragraph 1, subparagraph (1)(c) and the word “or” preceding it, and paragraphs 6(4), 8(9) and 15.

In Schedule 28, paragraph 4(1) and Part 2.

In Schedule 30—

paragraph 3(3),

paragraph 14,

paragraph 17,

paragraph 47(a),

paragraph 56,

Status: Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation: Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

	in paragraph 74 sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) and in sub-paragraph (4) paragraph (b) and the word “and” preceding it, paragraphs 85 to 90, paragraph 133(b), paragraph 194(3)(a)(ii), paragraph 204(b).
Protection of Children Act 1999 (c. 14).	Section 5. In section 7— (a) subsection (1)(a)(ii) and (iii), (b) the word “and” immediately preceding subsection (2)(c), and (c) subsection (4). In section 9(2), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (d). In section 12(2), the definition of “the 1988 Act”.
Employment Relations Act 1999 (c. 26).	Section 40.
Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 (c. 33).	In Schedule 14, paragraph 117.
Care Standards Act 2000 (c.14).	Section 100. In Schedule 4, paragraph 24.
Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21).	Sections 130 to 132. Section 148(2). In Schedule 7, in paragraph 35(1), the word “or” at the end of paragraph (b). Schedule 8. In Schedule 9, paragraphs 18, 26, 30, 35 and 58, in paragraph 59, sub-paragraphs (6)(b), (7)(b) and (c) and (8), and paragraph 91.
Criminal Justice and Court Services Act 2000 (c. 43).	Section 35(5). In Schedule 7, paragraph 83.

Status:

Point in time view as at 01/04/2010.

Changes to legislation:

Education Act 2002 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 10 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.